



ASTON MARTIN

V8 Vantage

An invitation to join the AMOC

The sporting spirit of the 1930s exists today in one of the world's most exclusive car clubs. Enthusiasts in nearly 60 countries are united by an interest in iconic cars with an enviable pedigree.

Enjoy the company of like-minded owners in a wide range of activities: social evenings, weekends away or motoring tours.

Something more competitive? AMOC Concours are a benchmark for connoisseurs of fine motorcars.

A need for speed? We organize track days, sprints and hill climbs as well as circuit racing in venues such as Silverstone, Goodwood and Lime Rock in the USA.



Mirroring Club activity, the Aston Martin Heritage Trust is an educational charity dedicated to the history of the marque from the earliest days almost a century ago. It shares the magnificent 15thC Oxfordshire barn which is the international headquarters, museum and archive. Why not log onto our website to discover more about these unique organizations, and enjoy a hearty welcome from us all.

The Aston Martin Owners Club
Drayton St. Leonard, Wallingford, Oxford,
England, OX10 7BG
Telephone: +44 (0) 1865 400 400
Facsimile: +44 (0) 1865 400 200
E-Mail: hqstaff@amoc.org
Website: www.amoc.org



1.....	Introduction
2.....	Vehicle Security
3.....	Before Driving
4.....	Controls
5.....	Driving
6.....	Convertible Roof
7.....	Climate Control
8.....	Audio
9.....	Hands-Free Phone
10.....	Satellite Navigation
11.....	Maintenance
12.....	Specifications
A	Service
B	Assistance
C	Warranty
D.....	Dealer Directory
E.....	Approved Repair Centres
F.....	Alphabetical Index

Every effort has been made to make sure that the information provided in this Owner's Guide is accurate and up-to-date. However neither the manufacturer or the Dealer, by whom this Owner's Guide is supplied, will in any circumstances be held responsible for any inaccuracy or the consequences thereof. All rights reserved.

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted, in any form, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or other means without prior written permission from Aston Martin Lagonda Limited.

The manufacturer reserves the right to vary specifications without notice in accordance with its policy of continual product improvement.

Produced by the Technical Publications Department
ASTON MARTIN LAGONDA LIMITED

Banbury Road,
Gaydon,
WARWICK
Warwickshire,
CV35 0DB,
England

Telephone (+44) 01926 644644
Fax (+44) 01926 644733

Issue 8 – August 2010
Part Number – BG33-19A321-HA

Introduction

Contents

Welcome	1.6
Component Location	1.7
Vehicle Identification	1.7
Data Recording	1.8
Reporting Safety Defects	1.9
Vehicle Provenance.....	1.9



CALIFORNIA Proposition 65 Warning

 **Warning: Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer, and birth defects or other reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer, and birth defects or other reproductive harm.**

Perchlorate Material

Certain components of this vehicle such as air bag modules, seat belt pretensioners and roll over protection devices may contain Perchlorate Material. Special handling may apply for service or vehicle end of life disposal.

Go to www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate for more information.

Welcome

to your new Aston Martin.

This Owner's Guide, along with other publications included in your literature pack, provides information which will enhance your pleasure from owning and driving your Aston Martin.

This Owner's Guide has been designed to explain the vehicle's operation and to make the control of its systems easy to understand and operate.

All new owner's are recommended to carefully study the contents of this Owner's Guide prior to driving.

This Owner's Guide forms part of the essential vehicle equipment for homologation purposes and must stay with the vehicle at all times.

Warnings, Cautions and Notes

The following Warnings, Cautions and Notes are used within this Owner's Guide to call your attention to specific types of information.

Warnings

 **Warning:** Identifies procedures which must be followed precisely to help avoid the risk of personal injury.

Cautions

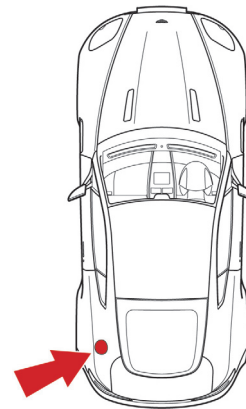
 **Provided to show procedures which must be followed precisely to reduce the possibility of damage to your vehicle.**

Notes

 Provided to show procedures which will help to avoid difficulties in the operation of your vehicle.

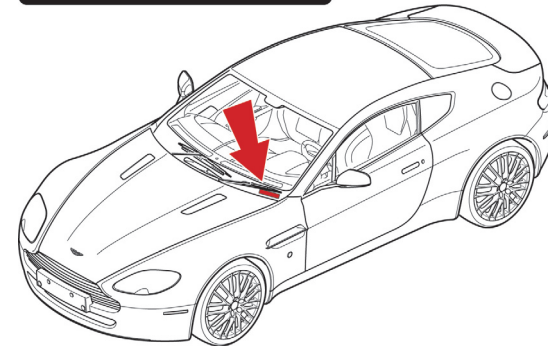
Component Location

All directions for locating components are described as viewed from the driver's seat, i.e. the fuel filler cap shown on this diagram will be described as 'located at the rear left side of the vehicle'.



Vehicle Identification

The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) is shown in the left corner of the windshield and is recorded as a barcode on the door pillar.



The VIN plate, attached to the right side suspension strut tower, is model and market dependant:

The VIN is also stamped into the floorpan in the right side footwell.

 To view the VIN stamped into the floorpan lift the carpet up, from the front, and then lift the sound deadening material.



Data Recording

Computers in your vehicle are capable of recording detailed data, potentially including but not limited to information such as:

- The use of restraint systems including seat belts by the driver and passengers
- Information about the performance of various systems and modules in the vehicle
- Information related to engine, throttle, steering, brake or other system status

Any of this information could potentially include information regarding how the driver operates the vehicle, potentially including but not limited to information regarding vehicle speed, brake, throttle application or steering input.

This information may be stored under regular operation, in a crash or near crash event.

This information may be read out and used by:

- Aston Martin
- Service and repair facilities
- Law enforcement or government agencies
- Others who may assert a right or obtain your consent to know such information

Reporting Safety Defects

North America

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Aston Martin Lagonda (North America) Inc. 533 MacArthur Boulevard, NJ 07430-2326.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your Dealer, or Aston Martin Lagonda (North America) Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hot line toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to www.safercar.gov; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 400 Seventh Street, SW., Washington, DC 20590.

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from www.safercar.gov.

Canada

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada in addition to notifying Ford of Canada.

To contact Transport Canada, call their toll-free number: 1-800-333-0510

Vehicle Provenance

Model:

e.g. Manual, Automatic

Body Color:

Interior Color:

Fascia Color:

Vehicle Identification Number:

As on the VIN plate

First Owner:

Selling Dealer:

Delivery Date:

Fourth Owner:

Selling Dealer:

Delivery Date:

Second Owner:

Selling Dealer:

Delivery Date:

Fifth Owner:

Selling Dealer:

Delivery Date:

Third Owner:

Selling Dealer:

Delivery Date:

Sixth Owner:

Selling Dealer:

Delivery Date:



ASTON MARTIN

Vehicle Security

Contents

Introduction	2.2	Deadlocking.....	2.10
Emotion Control Unit	2.2	Automatic Lock	2.10
Emergency Key.....	2.4	Approach Light.....	2.11
Unlocking and Opening	2.5	Homesafe	2.11
Locking	2.6	Alarm	2.11
Master Lock Switch	2.7	Reduced Guard.....	2.12
Fuel Flap Release	2.8	Passive Anti-Theft System	2.13
Trunk Lid	2.8	Garage Door Opener	2.14
Trunk Lid Emergency Release	2.9	Personalization.....	2.19

Introduction

This vehicle is protected by either a Standard or a High specification electronic security system.

Vehicle protection is enhanced by a Passive Anti-Theft System (PATS) which provides engine immobilization if the wrong vehicle key is used.

The total security system includes:

- Remote arm and disarm
- Perimeter sensing
- Remote door, trunk lid, fuel flap release lock and unlock
- Guard reduction mode

- Alarm siren with battery backup¹
- Random code encryption to prevent electronic scanning or grabbing of the vehicle key identity code
- Interior movement sensor²
- Tilt Sensor²
- Passive Anti-Theft System (PATS) (engine immobilization)

When the security system is armed, any attempt to forcibly open a door, the trunk lid or the hood will result in full alarm operation.

¹. Markets where audible sirens are permitted
². High specification alarm system

Emotion Control Unit

The vehicle is supplied with two vehicle keys³ (Emotion Control Units), a Glass key and a Spare key, and an Emergency key. A leather holder is provided to hold the 'in use' vehicle key when not in the Ignition Control.



Keep the spare key in a safe place.

Do not leave a vehicle key in the vehicle when unattended.

 *If a vehicle key is lost, contact your Aston Martin Dealer.*

³. Manufactured by  . 8D33-70290-BA.

⚠ FCC Warning: 'Note' - Changes not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

FCC - Radio Frequency Devices

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Radio Standard Specification (Canada)

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Do not leave a vehicle key in the vehicle when unattended.



If a vehicle key is lost, contact your Aston Martin Dealer.



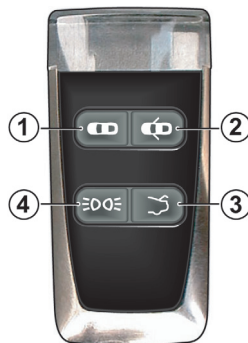
ASTON MARTIN

Vehicle Key Security Functions

[1] LOCK- Press once for one step vehicle locking and alarm enable. The vehicle will deadlock after 25 seconds. (Refer to 'Locking', page 2.6).

(Refer to 'Deadlocking', page 2.10).

Memory Seats¹ - When locking the vehicle the driver's seat and both door rear view mirrors positions are memorised. When unlocking the vehicle the seats move to their memorised positions (Refer to 'Seat Memory Function', page 3.5).



[2] UNLOCK- Press once to unlock the Driver's door only. Press twice, within three second, to unlock all doors (Refer to 'Unlocking and Opening', page 2.5).

[3] TRUNK OPEN- Press once to enable the trunk lid catch. Press twice, within three seconds, to release the trunk catch (Refer to 'Trunk Lid', page 2.8).

[4] APPROACH LIGHT- Press to set the front, rear side and interior lamps to ON (Refer to 'Approach Light', page 2.11).

Emergency Key

In the unlikely event that either the vehicle key fails to operate or the vehicle battery is fully discharged use the Emergency key to lock or unlock the vehicle.

Insert the Emergency key in the door lock and turn fully towards the front of the vehicle, then release, to centrally lock the vehicle, disable the trunk lid and fuel flap release switches. **The security system will not arm.**

To centrally unlock the vehicle, enable the boot lid and fuel flap release switches, turn fully towards the rear of the vehicle, then release. If the security system was armed, the alarm will start.



¹. If installed on your vehicle.

Unlocking and Opening

To stop the alarm insert the vehicle key (even if the vehicle key has lost all power) into the Ignition Control and move to position 'II' (ignition ON).

 If the vehicle battery is fully discharged the Emergency key will **only** lock or unlock a door.

 Even if the vehicle key has lost all power it will start the engine if required.

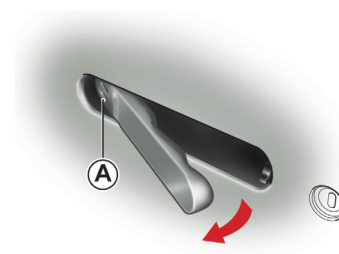
 Memory seats: The front seats and door rear view mirrors will not move to a preset position if the vehicle is unlocked using the emergency key.

 If the Emergency key is lost, contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

Point the vehicle key towards the vehicle and press the  button once to un-lock the drivers door and disarm the vehicle. The direction indicators will flash twice, showing that the alarm has been set to OFF. Press twice to un-lock the passenger door and enable the trunk lid catch and fuel flap release switch (Refer to 'Personalization', page 2.19).

 Stand within 16 ft (5 m) of the vehicle.

Push at point A and grab the emerging door release. Pull the door release to open the door.



 If preferred you can unlock both doors, enable the trunk lid and fuel flap release switches, with one press of the  button (Refer to 'Personalization', page 2.19).

 For ease of use at night white LEDs are incorporated into the door handles. An LED will come ON in both door handles when the vehicle is unlocked. A door LED will go OFF once the door is opened. If a door is not opened the LEDs will go OFF after two minutes.

 Memory Seats: If the vehicle has been opened using the spare key and the seats or door rear view mirrors have been adjusted, the seats and door rear view mirrors will move to the positions memorized by the key which is being used (Refer to 'Seat Memory Function', page 3.5).

 As the vehicle is unlocked, the interior lamps will come ON for five minutes. The lamps will go OFF 30 seconds after doors are closed or when the vehicle is started.

 If the door is left open the door puddle lamp will go out after 30 seconds.

Unlocking From Inside the Vehicle

If Reduced Guard or Automatic lock was set to ON before the vehicle was locked, one pull of a door handle will centrally unlock the doors, a second pull of the door handle will open that door.

(Refer to 'Reduced Guard', page 2.12)

(Refer to 'Automatic Lock', page 2.10)

When opening a door from inside the vehicle after Reduced Guard has been set to ON, the security system alarm will start. Press the

 button on the vehicle key to stop the alarm (there is approximately a ten second delay before the alarm is stopped).

 **If Reduced Guard was not set to ON before locking the vehicle, deadlocking, interior movement and tilt sensors¹ are enabled. A passenger will not be able to unlock a door from the inside (Refer to 'Reduced Guard', page 2.12).**

¹. If installed on your vehicle.

Locking

Make sure that both doors, the trunk lid and the hood are closed.

Point the vehicle key towards the vehicle and press the  button once to lock the doors, disable the trunk lid and fuel flap release switches and arm the security system. The direction indicators will flash once as the security system is armed (Refer to 'Personalization', page 2.19).

The seats and both door rear view mirror positions are memorized and will be recalled the next time the vehicle is opened using the same vehicle key (Refer to 'Seat Memory Function', page 3.5).

 **Do not leave the vehicle key in the trunk. If the trunk is closed there will be no access to the contents of the trunk.**

! *If a passenger is to stay in the vehicle after it has been locked, **Reduced Guard** must be set to **ON** before locking. This enables a passenger to open the doors from inside the vehicle (Refer to 'Reduced Guard', page 2.12).*

 Stand within 16 ft (5 m) of the vehicle.

 The security system will arm and the doors will deadlock after 25 seconds (Refer to 'Deadlocking', page 2.10).

 If the vehicle is locked with the trunk lid open, the vehicle will lock and arm but deadlocking, tilt and interior movement sensors¹ will not operate. Close the trunk lid to arm the complete security system.

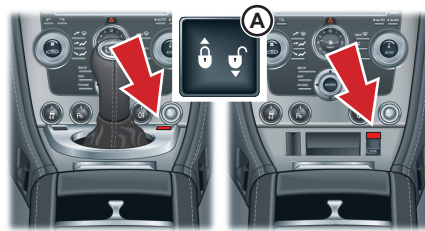
Automatic Re-locking

If the vehicle is locked and then unlocked but a door or the trunk lid is not opened within two minutes, then the vehicle will automatically lock and arm again.

¹. If installed on your vehicle.

Master Lock Switch

Doors, fuel flap and trunk lid release switches may be locked and unlocked by using the master lock switch (A). Press the switch to lock. Pull back on the switch to unlock.



If the vehicle is locked using the master lock switch, one pull of a door handle will centrally unlock the doors, a second pull of the door handle will open that door.

The master lock switch will not operate if the vehicle has been locked from the outside.

Operation of the master lock switch will override 'Automatic Locking' (Refer to 'Deadlocking', page 2.10).

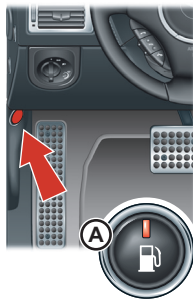
 One pull back on the master lock switch will also set the LED in the door handles to ON (for 10 seconds or until the door is opened). This may aid access for a passenger at night time.

 In the event of a vehicle accident the doors will automatically unlock.

Fuel Flap Release

Push the fuel flap release button (A) to open the fuel flap.

The fuel flap release is disabled when the vehicle is locked or when the vehicle moves off.



Trunk Lid

Trunk Lid Release

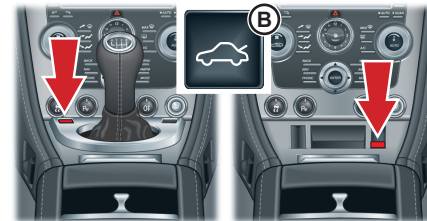
If the  button on the vehicle key is pressed **once** the release catch will be enabled. With the catch enabled press the button (A)₁ and raise the trunk lid. If the  button on the vehicle key is pressed **twice** (within three seconds) the catch will enable and release. Lift the lid.



 If the vehicle is locked and armed the security system will disarm and the direction indicators will flash twice when the trunk is opened (Refer to 'Personalization', page 2.19). The doors will stay locked.

Opening from Inside the Vehicle (Coupe Only)

Pull back on the trunk release switch (B). The trunk lid catch will enable and release. Lift the lid.



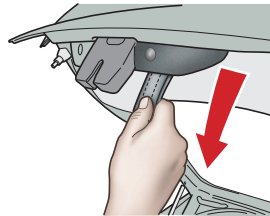
¹. Coupe shown. The trunk lid release button is in the same position on the Roadster.

Closing the Trunk Lid

Grasp the leather pull and pull the trunk lid down, then push the lid down, ensuring that its catch engages. Take care not to slam the trunk lid shut.

Lock the trunk lid by pressing the  button on the vehicle key. The direction indicators will flash once as the security system is armed (Refer to 'Personalization', page 2.19).

 Always make sure that the trunk lid is securely closed after use. The trunk interior lamps will stay ON for 30 minutes if the trunk lid is left partially open.



Vehicle Locked - Trunk Lid Open

 **Do not leave the vehicle key in the trunk. If the trunk lid is closed there will be no access to the contents of the trunk.**

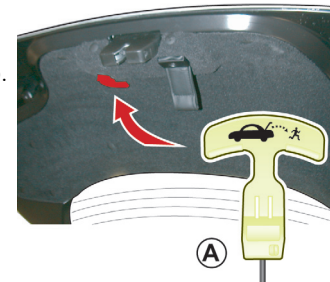
 To use the battery conditioner (Refer to 'Battery Conditioner', page 11.29) the trunk lid must be open (trunk lid down but not latched).

If the vehicle is locked while the trunk lid is open, the vehicle will lock and arm (deadlocking, tilt and interior movement sensors¹ will not operate). If the trunk lid is then closed (latched) deadlocking, tilt and interior movement sensors will set to ON and the whole vehicle will be locked and armed.

¹ If installed on your vehicle.

Trunk Lid Emergency Release

The trunk lid can be opened from inside the trunk by pulling the luminous emergency release handle (A).



Deadlocking

⚠ *If a passenger is to stay in the vehicle after locking the **Reduced Guard** button must be ON before locking (Refer to 'Reduced Guard', page 2.12).*

The vehicle will automatically deadlock after 25 seconds after arming the security system. When the vehicle is deadlocked, the doors cannot be opened from the inside by pulling the interior door handle. To open the doors use the vehicle key.

Automatic Lock

When Automatic Lock is ON the central locking system will automatically lock the vehicle as it moves off. The doors and the trunk lid will lock. This function prevents unwanted access to the vehicle when stopped at traffic lights, etc.

Press **MENU** (A) and navigate to <Car settings...> (Enter) <Lock settings...> (Enter) <Automatic settings...>. Select <Doors auto lock> or <Doors auto unlock on key out>. Press **ENTER** to toggle between ON (X) and OFF.

Then press and hold **BACK** to accept and return to the main screen.



<**Doors auto lock**> - Set to ON: Doors and the trunk lid automatically lock when the vehicle drives off. Set to OFF: Doors and the trunk lid will not lock when the vehicle drives off.

<**Doors auto unlock on key out**> - Set to ON: Doors and the trunk lid automatically unlock when the Vehicle Key is removed from the Ignition Control. Set to OFF: One pull of a door handle will centrally unlock both doors, a second pull of the door handle will open that door.

📖 *In the event of a vehicle accident the doors will automatically unlock.*

Approach Light

When approaching the vehicle the side and interior lamps can be set to ON by pressing the  button on the vehicle key.

The time that the lamps stay ON is programmable (Refer to 'Personalization', page 2.19).

Homesafe

 ***If Homesafe has been set to ON while the headlamps are ON, the main beam will stay ON. Make sure that the vehicle lamps are OFF before starting Homesafe.***

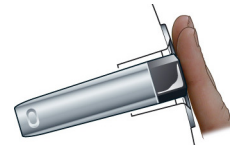
When exiting the vehicle and the vehicle key has been removed, flash the main beam (pull the left side stalk forwards and release without latching), to set Homesafe ON. The main beam and rear lamps will then stay ON for a determined amount of time and then go OFF. The time that the main beam and rear lamps stay ON is programmable (Refer to 'Personalization', page 2.19).

Alarm

When the alarm has started a siren will sound for a 25 seconds cycle (ten cycles maximum) and the direction indicators flash for five minutes after which the security system returns to the armed state. The doors and trunk lid will stay locked throughout.

Set the alarm to OFF at any time during operation by pressing the  button on the vehicle key or by inserting the vehicle key into the Ignition Control (position 'II'). There is approximately a ten second delay before the alarm is cancelled.

 *Insert the key to position 'II' by using the flat of a finger, as shown.*



Interior Movement Sensor

(if installed on your vehicle)

When the vehicle is locked and armed the interior movement sensor will sense movement inside the vehicle. If movement is detected it will start the alarm (Refer to 'Reduced Guard', page 2.12).

Tilt Sensor

(if installed on your vehicle)

When the vehicle is locked and armed the tilt sensor will sense if the vehicle is tilted i.e., if the vehicle is being raised on a jack. If vehicle tilt is detected it will start the alarm (Refer to 'Reduced Guard', page 2.12).

Reduced Guard

⚠ If a passenger is to stay in the vehicle after it has been locked, *Reduced Guard must be set to ON before locking. This allows a passenger to open the doors from inside the vehicle.*

When Reduced Guard is ON deadlocking, interior movement and tilt sensors₁ are disabled. This allows a passenger to open the doors from the inside by pulling the interior door handle and a passenger or animals to be left in the vehicle with the security system armed.

If a door is opened from the inside, while Reduced Guard is ON, the security system alarm will start.



Press the  button on the vehicle key to stop the alarm at any time (there is approximately a ten second delay before the alarm is stopped).

Reduced Guard is set by using the Car Settings menu.

Press **MENU** (A) and navigate to <Car settings...> (Enter) <Reduced guard...>. Select <Activate once> or <Ask on exit> and press

ENTER to toggle between ON () and OFF. Then press and hold **BACK** to accept and return to the main screen.

₁. If installed on your vehicle.

Passive Anti-Theft System

<Ask on exit> - Set to ON: each time the vehicle key is moved from ignition ON to ignition position I or 0 the message 'Press ENTER to reduce guard until engine is started. Press EXIT to cancel' will show in the message centre (right). The message will time out after one minute and Reduced Guard will not come ON. Set to OFF: No message will show and Reduced Guard will not come ON.

<Activate once> - Set to ON: Reduced Guard will come ON for one time. Set to ON each time Reduced Guard is required. Set to OFF: Reduced Guard will not come ON.

Reduced Guard stays ON until the vehicle key is inserted in the Ignition Control and moved to position 'II' (ignition ON).

The Passive Anti-Theft System (PATS) is a fully automatic engine immobilizer.

 *In ta vehicle key is lost, a duplicate key can be created and programmed from the spare key by your Aston Martin Dealer.*

Starting the Engine

When the security system is disarmed and the vehicle key is in the Ignition Control, the PATS controller sends a signal to the vehicle key. The vehicle key must respond with a valid code before engine start will be enabled. If a valid code is received, the ignition system will operate normally.

If the vehicle key code is not received, or is invalid, engine start stays disabled.

PATS Status

The PATS system state is shown by the red symbol on the instrument cluster (A).



Ignition	Action (Valid code)
ON	Symbol comes ON for three seconds.
OFF	Symbol will flash.
OFF and the vehicle key removed from the Ignition Control	Symbol will flash for five minutes or one minute after the vehicle is locked using the vehicle key.

Fault Mode

If the status symbol continues flashing when the ignition is set to ON, the vehicle will stay immobilized. Should this situation arise try removing and then inserting the vehicle key back to position 'II' in the Ignition Control.

If this is unsuccessful try the spare key. If successful, source a replacement for the faulty vehicle key. If problems persist with the vehicle key, consult your Aston Martin Dealer.

Garage Door Opener

(if installed on your vehicle)

Available with Auto Dimming mirror only

The Garage Door Opener (Homelink® Universal Transceiver) operating buttons and transceiver are located in the interior rear view mirror.

The transceiver can be programmed to transmit the radio frequencies of up to three different transmitters used to operate garage doors, entry gates, home lights, security systems, or other radio frequency operated devices.



A full list of radio frequency operated devices can be either obtained via the HomeLink Hot-line or through the HomeLink compatibility list which is provided on the HomeLink website.

For information, or for assistance, contact your Aston Martin Dealer. Alternatively contact Homelink directly at www.homelink.com or call the HomeLink Hot-line:
Toll-free: 1-800-355-3515

 **Warning: Do not use the transceiver with any garage door opening system that lacks the safety stop and reverse feature as required by safety standards. A garage door opening system which cannot detect an object, signalling the door to stop and reverse, does not meet current safety standards. Using a garage door opening system without these features increases risk of serious injury or death.**

 **Warning: When programming the transceiver to a garage door opening system, make sure that people, the vehicle and objects are out of the way to prevent potential harm or damage as the gate or garage door will operate during the programming.**

 Keep the original transmitter for future use or programming procedures if, for example, you purchase a new vehicle.

 This device may suffer from interference if operated in the vicinity of a mobile or fixed station transmitter. This interference is likely to affect the hand-held transmitter as well as the in-vehicle transceiver.

 The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or TV interference caused by unauthorized modifications to this equipment. Such modifications could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Programming

 Step 1 erases all programming. It only requires completing if programming Homelink for the first time or when erasing all existing programming. It does not have to be followed to program the other HomeLink buttons.

 The HomeLink buttons can be reprogrammed individually but not individually erased. Step 1 must be completed to erase all programming.

1. Press and hold the two outer HomeLink buttons, releasing only when the HomeLink LED begins to flash after 20 seconds.

All three buttons are now cleared. The HomeLink system is now in setting mode.

 As a security precaution make sure that all programming is erased in the HomeLink system before selling this vehicle.

2. Hold the original remote control of the device to be programmed at a distance of 4-12 inch (10-30 cm) away from the HomeLink transmitter unit keeping the LED in view all the time.



 The distance between the remote control and the transmitter unit depends on the system being programmed. You may require several attempts at different distances. Maintain each setting position for at least 15 seconds before trying out another.

3. Using both hands, simultaneously push the remote control button and the desired button (1, 2 or 3).
4. The LED will flash, first slowly and then rapidly. When the LED flashes rapidly, release both buttons.



The rapid flashing LED shows successful programming of the new frequency signal.

Operation

The vehicle should be within the operating range of the gate or garage door opener and the ignition should be set to ON.

The HomeLink system operates the garage door opener (or other device) in exactly the same way as the original remote control.

When you have programmed the HomeLink system, press the appropriate button 1, 2, or 3 on the control panel to operate the garage door opener.



The LED will come ON when the button on the control panel is pressed.



For convenience, the original remote control of the device may also be used at any time.

In the case of a standard code, the HomeLink LED is constantly ON throughout the transmission process. For use with compatible systems, no further action is necessary.

If HomeLink now does not operate the garage door opener (or other device), this may be because the original remote control has a rolling code feature. Refer to 'Rolling Code Synchronisation'.

Rolling Code Synchronisation

Check, by going through the following steps, whether or not the garage door opener (or other device) is equipped with a rolling code feature.

- Look in the garage door opener manual for clarification
 - The remote control apparently programs HomeLink but HomeLink does not operate the garage door opener
 - Press and hold down the programmed HomeLink button
- With a rolling code system, the HomeLink LED flashes quickly for a short time and then stays ON constantly for two seconds. This pattern repeats itself for up to 20 seconds.

If HomeLink was programmed with a rolling code system, then after the end of the programming period it must be synchronised with this system again before it will function properly.

Follow the instructions below for Rolling Code Synchronisation (the procedure will take less time with a second person to help).

The vehicle must be within operating range of the garage door opener and the ignition should be set to ON. Make sure you comply with the safety instructions even when synchronizing the rolling code.

1. Locate the Training button (programming button) on the garage door opener motor head unit. Exact location and color of the button may vary by gate or garage door opener brand (refer to the operating instructions of the garage door opener 'Training additional remote controls').
2. Press the Training button (programming button) on the garage door opener motor head unit (which will usually set a 'training' LED to ON).

 *Following step 2, there are typically 30 seconds in which to initiate step 3.*

3. Firmly press and release the programmed HomeLink button. Press and release the HomeLink button a second time to complete the training process (Some garage door openers may require this procedure a third time to complete the training).

The garage door opener should now recognise the HomeLink signal and operate when the HomeLink button is pressed.

The next two buttons may now be programmed if this has not previously been done (Refer to 'Programming', page 2.15).

Reprogramming

If a HomeLink button has been programmed to operate a device, and you now wish to use this button to operate a different device, proceed as follows. This procedure will erase the existing programming of the respective HomeLink button.

1. Press the appropriate HomeLink button 1, 2, or 3 which requires reprogramming and keep holding it for about 20 seconds until the LED starts flashing slowly. Do not release until step 4 has been completed.
2. When the LED begins to flash slowly (after approximately 20 seconds), hold the remote control of the device you wish to train approximately 4-12 inch (10-30 cm) away from the HomeLink transmitter unit - keeping the LED in view.



The distance between the remote control and the HomeLink transmitter unit depends on the system being learned. You may require several attempts at different distances. Maintain each setting position for at least 15 seconds before trying out another.

3. Now press the remote control and keep it pressed.
4. The HomeLink LED will flash, first slowly and then rapidly. When the LED begins to flash rapidly, release both buttons.

Personalization

A number of security functions can be personalized. The functions are set by using the Infotainment **SCREEN**.

- [1] **ON/OFF**- Infotainment centre ON and OFF
- [2] **SCREEN**- Shows options, menus and information.
- [3] **TUNING**- Turn left or right to navigate in the menus.
- [4] **MENU**- Opens the main menu.
- [5] **ENTER**- Select in the menu or open a selection.
- [6] **JOYSTICK**- Navigate up or down in the menus
- [7] **BACK**- Navigate back in the menu, cancel a selection.

Selection

With the vehicle key in position 'I' or 'II' in the Ignition Control, press **MENU** and navigate to the required setting, press **ENTER**. Use the **JOYSTICK** to make a selection, press **ENTER** to accept.



Menu

1) Car settings...

1) Reduced guard...

1) Activate once

2) Ask on exit

2) Light settings...

1) Lock confirm. light

2) Unlock confirm. light

3) Approach light duration...

1) 30, 60 or 90 seconds

4) Homesafe light duration...

2) 30, 60 or 90 seconds

3) Lock settings...

1) Automatic settings...

1) Doors auto lock

2) Doors auto unlock on key out

2) Doors unlock...

1) All doors

2) Driver door, then all

4) Mirror settings...

1) Auto mirror fold flat enable

2) Reverse mirror dip settings...¹

1) Auto

2) Passenger only

3) Passenger and driver

5) Information...

1) VIN number...



ASTON MARTIN

¹. If installed on your vehicle.

Before Driving

Contents

Checks Before Driving.....	3.2	Airbags.....	3.17	Media Devices	3.29
Seat Controls.....	3.2	Advanced Restraints System	3.19	Trunk Cover	3.30
Seat Memory Function	3.5	Child Safety.....	3.23	Accessory Sockets.....	3.31
Steering Wheel	3.7	Child Seats.....	3.24	Ashtray and Cigar Lighter.....	3.32
Interior Mirrors.....	3.7	Tether Anchor	3.25	Reading Lamps.....	3.33
Door Mirrors	3.8	Automatic Locking Retractors	3.26	Electric Windows	3.33
Restraints System.....	3.11	Deployable Rollbars	3.27	Coat Hooks	3.34
Seat Belts	3.13	Interior Storage	3.27	Umbrella.....	3.35

Checks Before Driving

Inspect the vehicle to make sure that everything is according to the information and specifications in this Owner's Guide.

Outside the vehicle:

- Visually check the road wheels, nuts and tires
- Check that all windows, mirrors and lamps are clear and unobstructed
- Check that the trunk lid, hood and fuel filler flap are securely closed
- Check the operation of all lamps

Once Inside the vehicle:

- Check that the doors are securely closed
- Check that the seat, mirrors and steering wheel adjustments are correct
- Check that all gauges and symbols are reading correctly (Refer to 'Controls', page 4.1)
- Check that the seat backs are in an upright position and that the seat latch is engaged
- Check that all occupants have fastened their seat belts

Seat Controls

 **Warning:** *Do not attempt to adjust the seat whilst driving.*

 **The vehicle key must only be inserted into the Ignition Control with the two indents first, as shown. Attempting to insert the larger end first the key may damage the Ignition Control.**



The seats can be adjusted while the vehicle key is in the Ignition Control.

Gently insert the vehicle key up to position 'I' (press down until the instrument cluster and Infotainment centre lights come ON) and release.

They can also be adjusted:

- Up to six minutes after a door is unlocked and before the vehicle key is inserted into the Ignition Control
- Up to six minutes after the vehicle key is removed from the Ignition Control

If the seat operation times out:

- Place the vehicle key in the Ignition Control
- Close or open a door

The seat adjustment controls are located each side of the centre console (A).



Seat Head Restraints

The Driver and front Passenger seats include non-adjustable head restraints (A), which limit the rearward travel of the head in a rear impact and may reduce whip lash injuries.

When sitting in the seats make sure that the seat back is in an upright position and that the rear of the head is positioned in the centre of the head restraint area.

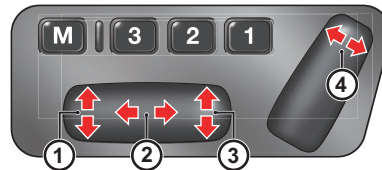


The head restraints are most effective when the distance between the rear of the head and the head restraint is kept to a minimum 2 in (50 mm) or less).

Seat Position

 **Memory Seats:** When making seat adjustments, i.e. moving the seat base rearwards, raising or lowering the seat base, the seat back will motor forwards whenever it approaches trim panels located behind it. If the seat back is tilted backwards the seat base will move forwards if the seat back approaches trim panels.

- [1] - Raise or lower the **front** of the seat₁.
- [2] - Move the seat **forwards** or **rearwards**.
- [3] - Raise or lower the **rear** of the seat₁.
- [4] - Increase or decrease the **angle of the seat back**.



Seat Comfort

- [5] - Press forwards or rearwards to increase or reduce the **lower lumbar support**.
- [6] - Press forwards or rearwards to increase or reduce the **upper lumbar support**.
- [7] - Press to the rear for the **lower heat setting**, press to the front for the **higher heat setting**. A LED shows which heat level is ON. Press to the centre position for OFF (LEDs OFF).

 The ignition must be **ON** before the heated seat and lumbar support can be operated.



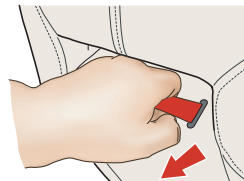
₁. Passenger height adjust seat only.

Seat Back Release

Press and hold in button A to release the seat back, once the seat has been moved forward release the button and manually move the seat back forwards.



 In the unlikely event of power failure a manual release strap is provided in the seat back. Pull and hold the strap to release the seat back and then move the seat back forward.



Seat Memory Function

(If installed on your vehicle)

 **Warning:** Make sure that there is nothing in front of, behind, or under the seat during adjustment.

 **Warning:** To avoid injury, make sure that children do not play with the switches.

 **Warning:** If the seat accidentally begins to move, press any seat control button to stop the seat.

The position of the driver and passenger seats can be memorized and recalled. Three different driving position profiles can be entered in the memory. The memory position of the driver's seat also includes both door rear view mirrors.

The Memory function buttons are located in the seat adjustment controls which are located each side of the centre console (A).

Setting a Preset Position

 **Warning:** Do not attempt to adjust the seat whilst driving.

Adjust the seat and the door rear view mirrors to the desired position.

- Seat Adjustment (Refer to 'Seat Controls', page 3.2).
- Mirror Adjustment (Refer to 'Door Mirrors', page 3.8).



 When making seat adjustments, i.e. moving the seat base rearwards, raising or lowering the seat base, the seat back will motor forwards whenever it approaches trim panels located behind it. If the seat back is tilted backwards the seat base will move forwards if the seat back approaches trim panels.

Push both the memory button (M) and the desired setting button (1, 2 or 3) simultaneously, then release, to memorize the configuration.

By repeating these steps and pressing an unused button (1, 2 or 3), a second and third driving position can be stored in the memory.



 When making adjustments to a set driving position, reset the new position in the same memory channel. The previous memory is erased when a new driving position is entered.

Recalling a Memorized Position

Once in the seat press and hold button 1, 2 or 3 (depending on which position required) until all movement is stopped. The seat and door rear view mirrors (when adjusting the driver's seat) move to the programmed position. If the button is released all movement will stop, press and hold again to continue movement.

Memory Using the Vehicle Key

When the vehicle is locked using the vehicle key, the driver's seat and both door rear view mirrors will remember their positions. The next time the vehicle is opened using the same vehicle key, the seat and door rear view mirrors will move to the memorized position.

 The seats and door rear view mirrors only move if they have been moved previously, i.e. the spare vehicle key has been used to open and close the vehicle.

Emergency Stop

If the seat accidentally begins to move, press any seat control button to stop the seat.

Steering Wheel

⚠ Warning: *Do not adjust steering wheel whilst driving.*

⚠ Warning: *Make sure that the steering column is fully locked in position. The reach and tilt release lever must be fully up, in line with the steering column.*

Reach and Tilt

Reach and tilt are adjusted by using the release lever (A).

Pull the release lever downwards and manoeuvre the steering wheel to the required position.

Hold the steering wheel in the required position and lock it by pulling the release lever up.



Interior Mirrors

Rear View Mirror

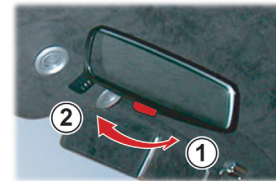
Adjust on its ball mounting until a satisfactory rear view is obtained.

Manual Dip

Use to avoid dazzle from headlamps of following vehicles.

[1] - Normal position.

[2] - Dipped position.



Automatic Dimming

(If installed on your vehicle)

The rear view mirror will dim automatically if the glare from the headlamps of following vehicles becomes too bright.

The mirror will return to normal view as unwanted glare reduces to an acceptable level.

If the mirror is dimmed when reverse gear is selected the mirror will revert to normal view.



Vanity Mirror

A vanity mirror is located in each sun visor.



Door Mirrors

To adjust the door mirrors select the left or right mirror (B). Then move the joystick (A) up, down, left or right to adjust the selected mirror.

When the heated rear windshield is ON the heaters in the door mirrors will operate for 6.5 minutes.

 The vehicle key must at position 'I' or 'II' in the Ignition Control before the door mirrors can be adjusted.

 An amber LED shows the selected mirror.



Power Fold Door Mirrors

The Power Fold Mirror function moves the door mirror assemblies until folded flat against the doors (folded).

Insert the vehicle key to position 'I' or 'II' in the Ignition Control.

Move the mirrors to the folded position by pressing down and releasing both the left and right mirror select switches (B) together. The mirrors will motor to the folded position. Repeat to motor the mirrors back to the driving position.

Auto Fold

When this vehicle is locked using the vehicle key the mirrors will automatically fold in flat against the doors. They return to the driving position once the vehicle key has been inserted into the Ignition Control.

To set Auto Fold ON and OFF

Press **MENU** (C) and navigate to <Car settings...> (Enter) <Mirror settings...> (Enter) <Auto mirror fold flat enabled>. Press **ENTER** to toggle between ON (X) and OFF. Then press and hold **BACK** to accept and return to the main screen.

 If the mirrors have been folded using the Power Fold function then the mirrors will stay folded until placed in the driving position using the Power Fold function again.



 Door mirror vibration can occur if the mirrors have been moved manually (folded or unfolded), either intentionally or accidentally. To reset the linkage operate the power fold function once to fold or unfold the mirrors.

Reverse Dip

(if installed on your vehicle)

This function provides a superior view of the rear of the vehicle while reversing.

When reverse gear is selected:

Automatic Mode - When reverse gear is selected the door mirrors automatically move to the first preset dip position. If the mirror requires further lowering, press down and release the joystick again. If the mirror is lowered to far, press the mirror joystick up and release.

Manual Mode - Press down and release the mirror joystick (A). This will lower the door mirrors to preset position 1 dip. If the mirror requires further lowering, press down and release the joystick again. If the mirror is lowered to far, press the mirror joystick up and release. In Manual or Automatic mode the mirrors return to driving view when reverse gear is de-selected or when either mirror button (B) is pressed.

Reverse Dip Settings

Press **MENU** (C) and navigate to <Car settings...> (Enter) <Mirror settings...> (Enter) <Reverse mirror dip settings...>. Select <Auto (reverse gear selected)>, <Passenger only> or <Passenger and driver>.

Press **ENTER** to toggle between ON (X) and OFF. Then press and hold **BACK** to accept and return to the main screen.

<**Auto**> - If set to ON: The door mirrors dip automatically when reverse gear is selected. If set to OFF: The door mirrors stay in manual mode.

<**Passenger only**> - Only the Passenger door mirror dips.

<**Passenger and driver**> - Passenger and Driver door mirrors dip.

Memory Mirrors

(If installed on your vehicle)

The position of the driver and passenger door mirrors and seats can be memorized and recalled. Details on memory door mirrors can be found in Memory Seats (Refer to 'Seat Memory Function', page 3.5).



Restraints System

The Restraints System provides an improved overall level of frontal crash protection to the seat occupants and is designed to help further reduce the risk of airbag-related injuries. The system is able to analyze different occupant conditions and crash severity before operation of the appropriate safety devices to help better protect a range of occupants in a variety of frontal crash situations.

A collection of crash sensors provide information to the Restraints Control Module (RCM). During a crash, the RCM may or may not operate the safety belt pre-tensioners or either none, one, or both stages of the dual-stage airbag supplemental restraints based on crash severity and conditions.

The fact that the pretensioners or airbags did not operate for both seat occupants in a collision does not mean that something is wrong with the system.

Rather, it means the system determined the accident conditions (crash severity, belt usage, etc.) were not appropriate to operate these safety devices. Front airbags are designed to operate only in frontal and near-frontal collisions, not rollovers, side-impacts, or rear-impacts unless the collision causes sufficient longitudinal deceleration.

The system consists of:

- Driver and passenger safety belts with pretensioners, load limiting systems, and safety belt usage sensors
- Driver and passenger dual-stage airbags
- Driver and passenger side airbags
- Driver and Passenger seat position sensors
- Crash severity sensors
- Restraints Control Module (RCM)
- Restraint system warning symbol 

Dual-Stage Airbags

When operated, the airbags will deploy at either a normal or reduced level of inflation, depending on crash severity. Various sensors determine the direction and severity of an impact. The system analyses this information then deploys the appropriate airbags only.

Seat Position Sensors

Seat position sensors determine the position of the driver and passenger seats. The information is used to tailor the airbag deployment activation depending upon seat position.

The system is designed to help protect smaller drivers sitting close to the driver airbag by providing a lower airbag output level.

Pre-tensioner and Load Limiting Systems

The driver and passenger seat belts are equipped with pre-tensioner and load limiting systems.

In most moderate frontal or near frontal accidents, the front airbag and pre-tensioner systems will deploy simultaneously.

The pre-tensioners take up slack in the seat belts as the airbags are expanding. The load limiting system releases belt webbing in a controlled manner to reduce belt force on the occupant's chest.



In some moderate frontal or near frontal accidents, only the pre-tensioner system will deploy.

Safety Belt Usage Sensors

Safety belt usage sensors detect whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts are fastened.

The information is used to tailor the airbag deployment and safety belt pre-tensioner activation depending upon safety belt usage.

Crash Severity Sensors

Crash severity sensors enhance the ability to detect the severity of an impact. Positioned up front, they provide valuable information early in the crash event on the severity of the impact. This allows the Restraints System to distinguish between different levels of crash severity and modify the deployment strategy of the dual-stage airbags and safety belt pretensioners.

Restraints Control Module

The Restraints Control Module (RCM) monitors its own internal circuits and the circuits for the airbag supplemental restraints, crash sensor(s), safety belt pretensioners, safety belt buckle sensors, and the seat position sensors.



In addition, the RCM also monitors the restraints warning symbol in the instrument cluster.

Determining if the System is Operational



The warning symbol in the instrument cluster shows the condition of the system.

A difficulty with the system is shown by one or more of the following:

- The warning symbol will either flash or stay ON
- The warning symbol does not come ON immediately after the ignition is set to ON

If either of these conditions occur, even intermittently, have the restraint system serviced at your Aston Martin Dealer immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a collision.

Seat Belts



Warning: Wearing your seat belt is crucial to your safety. Not wearing a seat belt increases chance of serious injury or death in the event of an accident.



Warning: Be sure that you and your passenger always fasten their seat belt and use them properly even though airbags are provided.



Warning: Reclining the seat back decreases protection provided by the seat belt in the event of a crash. Adjust the seat back to an upright position.



Warning: Make sure that the seat back is locked in place. Otherwise it could move forward in the event of a sudden stop or crash and cause injury.

 **Warning:** *Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.*

 **Warning:** *Never place shoulder portion of belt under your arm or behind your back.*

 **Warning:** *Always remove from your pockets rigid or breakable objects, i.e. spectacles or a mobile phone, which could be trapped under seat belts, possibly causing injury in the event of an accident.*

 **Warning:** *Expectant mothers should seek medical advice on the most appropriate way to wear the seat belt.*

 **Warning:** *Seat belts must be kept clean so that the retractor works correctly. Make sure that belt webbing is not twisted, looped, frayed or obstructed in any way. If in doubt about condition or operation of seat belt installation, have it checked by your Aston Martin Dealer.*

 **Warning:** *No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent seat belt adjusting devices from operating, or prevent seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack. Never install accessories on your seat belts.*

 **Warning:** *Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.*

 **Warning:** *Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.*

 **Warning:** *Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.*

 **Warning:** *It is essential to replace the entire seat belt assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.*

 **Warning:** *Each belt must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupants lap.*

⚠ Warning: When installed, the seat belt webbing must not contact any sharp edges which could abrade or cut the webbing during normal use or in an accident. If necessary, the webbing must be protected.

Each seat has three point, inertia reel seat belts installed.

 Items 1, 2 and 3 show the three points of the seat belt. Item 3 is also the location of the belt buckle.



The inertia belt reels will automatically tension the belts to provide security with comfort. In the event of a collision or during severe braking, the belt reels will lock.



A warning symbol in the instrument cluster will come ON for six seconds (approximately) when the ignition is set to ON if the driver's seat belt is not fastened. An audible warning will sound at the same time¹.

¹. Market dependant.

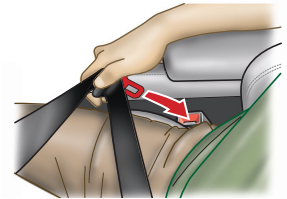
Seat Belt Fastening

Pull out the seat belt, drawing the tongue over the shoulder and across the chest.

Push the tongue into the belt buckle latch until a positive click is heard.



Pull upwards on the diagonal belt to make sure that the latching is secure and to remove all slack from the belt. Finally, double check that the lap belt is installed snugly, low down across the hips, and that there are no twists.



If it is necessary for an occupant to adjust their seat or seating position during a journey, the belt tension might be disturbed. The occupant should therefore (as soon as it is safe to do so) gently pull down the shoulder run of the seat belt to create some slack and then immediately release it to re-tension the belt for the new seating position.



 On the outside of both seats is a seat belt location flap. This maintains the seat belt at shoulder height when the seat belt is released.

 When parked on an incline, the seat belt may lock as it is withdrawn. This is not a fault. If the mechanism locks, release the belt tension and then pull the belt very gently to avoid operation of the inertia lock.

Seat Belt Unfastening

Depress the button on the buckle. While holding the seat belt tongue allow the belt to slowly retract to its stored position.



Seat Belt Fastening (Child)

 **Warning:** An infant or child that is not properly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash. Seat belts are designed for adults and larger children; infants and smaller children must be restrained in an approved child safety seat.

Make sure that there is no slack in the webbing and the restraint fits the child snugly across the rib cage and hips. These are the parts of the body most able to take the force of impact. The lap strap should pass across the top of the child's thighs, bearing on the pelvis, not on the abdominal area.

Airbags

Supplemental Restraints System

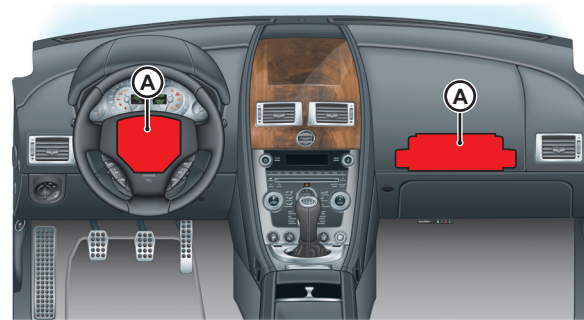
The vehicle is equipped with driver and passenger airbags. The airbags and seat belt pre-tensioners are electrically controlled by the restraints system (Refer to 'Restraints System', page 3.11).

The airbags (A) only deploy in a serious frontal collision. The side airbags (B (one airbag in each seat)) only deploy according to which side has been impacted in a serious side collision.

The purpose of the driver and passenger airbags is to provide **additional** protection for the occupants in the event of a serious impact (frontal or side impacts). The airbags are supplementary to the seat belts.



Important airbag safety labels are located on the sun visors and on the end of the instrument panel (passenger side). Make sure that the instructions on these labels are read and complied with prior to driving the vehicle.



 If you are considering modifying this vehicle in any way to accommodate a disability, for example by altering or adapting the driver's or passenger's seat or airbag systems, please contact Aston Martin:

Customer Service Manager
Aston Martin North America
One Premier Place
Irvine, CA 92618

Airbag Deployment

⚠ Warning: *The use of accessory seat covers may prevent the deployment of the side airbags and increase the risk of injury in an accident. Do not use accessory seat covers.*

⚠ Warning: *All occupants, including the driver, should always wear seat belts, whether or not an airbag is provided, to decrease the risk of injury or death in the event of a crash.*

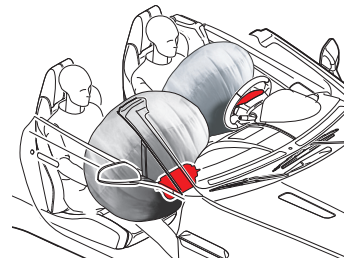
⚠ Warning: *No objects whatsoever should be attached to the centre cover of the steering wheel or the passenger fascia panel. Such objects could cause harm if the vehicle is in a collision severe enough to cause the airbags to deploy.*

Airbags inflate rapidly and with considerable force; there is therefore a risk of death or serious injury such as fractures, facial and eye injuries or internal injuries, particularly to occupants who are not properly restrained by seat belts or are not sitting correctly when the airbags deploy. The risk of injury from a deploying airbag is greatest close to the trim panel covering the airbag.

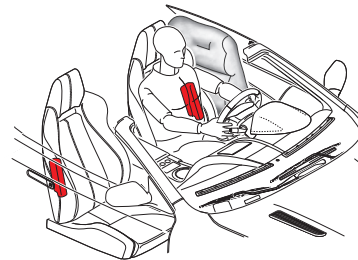
The whole sequence of events from sensing the impact to full inflation of the airbag takes place in a fraction of a second.

The noise and gas associated with the deployment of the airbags is not injurious to health.

Front Airbags - on a frontal impact.



Side Airbags - on a side impact (where the impact is on that side only).



Advanced Restraints System

Do not change, modify or tamper with the steering wheel, passenger side fascia or any other part of the airbag system. Such actions could disable the system or cause inadvertent airbag deployment.

The system will not deploy in the event of minor frontal or side impacts, such as contacts when parking. The airbag system is not designed to protect against rear impacts.

Any work on the airbag system must only be carried out by an Aston Martin Dealer.

The Advanced Restraints System provides the following, in addition to the Restraints System.



If it is necessary to modify the Advanced Restraints system to accommodate a person with disabilities, contact your Aston Martin Dealer at the phone number shown in the Dealer Directory of this Owner's Guide.

Passenger Sensing

Passenger sensing is designed to meet the regulatory requirements of Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS)208 and is designed to disable the passenger's front airbag under certain conditions.

Passenger sensing works with sensors which are installed in the passenger's seat. The sensors are designed to detect the presence of a properly seated occupant and determine if the passenger's front airbag should be enabled or disabled.

Passenger sensing will **disable** the passenger's front airbag if:

- The passenger seat is unoccupied
- When a child is present or a child is present in a child seat which is installed according to the manufacturer's instructions
- A passenger takes their weight off of the seat for a period of time

If the passenger seat is occupied and the sensing system has turned the passenger's front airbag off (refer to the table on the right), the 'PASS AIRBAG OFF' symbol will come ON and stay ON to show that the passenger front airbag is inactive.



Passenger sensing will **enable** the passenger's front airbag anytime the system senses that a person of adult size is sitting properly in the passenger seat.

Passenger Seat	Airbag	PASS AIRBAG OFF Symbol
Empty	OFF	OFF
Child + Child seat	OFF	ON
Adult	ON	OFF

 In some cases a small child placed in a child seat will not operate the PASS AIRBAG OFF symbol. If this occurs the passenger airbag status will be as described above for an empty seat, i.e. passenger seat airbag 'Not Active' but the 'PASS AIRBAG OFF' symbol will not come ON.

 The passenger sensing system may detect small or medium objects placed on the seat base. For most objects which are on the passenger seat, the passenger front airbag will be disabled. Even though the passenger airbag is disabled, the pass airbag off symbol may or may not come ON according to the table above.

 The PASS AIRBAG OFF symbol will come ON for a short period when the ignition is set to ON position to confirm it is functional.

Seating Position

 **Warning:** Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor. Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seat back reclined too far can take off weight from the seat base and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in a crash.

 **Warning:** Improper installation of a child seat may cause the Passenger Sensing system to leave the front airbag active. Always make sure that child seats are correctly installed on the passenger seat. Read the child seat manufactures installation instructions.

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on safety belts, it's very important that they continue to sit properly.

A properly seated occupant sits upright, leaning against the seat back, and centered on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor. Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event.

For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or side ways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

If a person of adult size is sitting in the passenger's seat and the 'PASS AIRBAG OFF' symbol is ON, it is possible that the person is not sitting properly in the seat.

If this happens:

1. Set the ignition to OFF. Ask the person to place the seat back in the full upright position.
2. Have the person sit upright in the seat, centred on the seat cushion, with the person's legs comfortably extended.
3. Start the vehicle and have the person stay in this position for about two minutes. This will allow the system to detect that person and enable the passenger's front airbag.
4. If the 'PASS AIRBAG OFF' symbol stays lit even after this, the person should be advised to power the seat to its rear most position.
5. Contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

 **Warning: Do not stow objects in seat back document pocket, the seat base front pocket or hang objects off seat back if a child is in the passenger seat.**

 **Warning: Do not place objects underneath the passenger seat or between the seat and the center console.**

 **Warning: Check the PASS AIRBAG OFF symbol for proper airbag status.**

 **Warning: Failure to follow these instructions may interfere with the passenger seat sensing system.**

If you think that the status of the 'PASS AIRBAG OFF' symbol is incorrect, check for the following:

- Objects
 - Lodged underneath the seat
 - Between the seat cushion and the center console
 - Hanging off the seat back
 - Stowed in the seat back document pocket
 - Placed on the occupant's lap
- Cargo interference with the seat

These conditions may cause the weight of a properly seated occupant to be incorrectly interpreted by the passenger sensing system. The person in the passenger seat may appear heavier or lighter due to the conditions described.

If the 'PASS AIRBAG OFF' symbol is ON, do the following:

The driver or adult passengers should check for any objects that may be lodged underneath the passenger seat or cargo interfering with the seat.

If objects are lodged or cargo is interfering with the seat take the following steps to remove the obstruction:

1. Set the ignition to OFF.
2. Check for any objects lodged underneath the passenger seat or cargo interfering with the seat.
3. Remove the obstruction(s) (if found).
4. Start the vehicle.
5. Wait at least two minutes and verify that the 'PASS AIRBAG OFF' symbol is no longer ON.

If the 'PASS AIRBAG OFF' symbol stays ON, this may or may not be a problem due to the passenger sensing system.

Do not attempt to repair or service the system. Take the vehicle immediately to the nearest Aston Martin Dealer.

 **Warning:** Any alteration or modification to the passenger seat may affect the performance of the passenger sensing system.

Determining if the System is Operational

 The 'SRS' warning symbol in the instrument cluster shows the condition of the system.

A difficulty with the system is shown by one or more of the following:

Child Safety

- The 'SRS' warning symbol will either flash or stay ON
- The 'SRS' warning symbol does not come ON immediately after the ignition is set to ON

If either of these conditions occur, even intermittently, have the restraint system serviced at your Aston Martin Dealer immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a collision.

A child, regardless of age, should always be restrained when travelling in a vehicle.

 **Warning: Each seat belt assembly must be used by only one occupant. It is dangerous to put a seat belt around a child being carried on the occupants lap.**

 **Warning: Do not allow children to travel in a vehicle without a child seat. An appropriate child seat or harness should always be used.**

 **Make sure that an installed child seat does not rest against the door, that the child sits properly in the seat and does not lean close to, or against, the door or window.**

Child Seats and Passenger Airbags

 **Warning: Extreme Hazard. Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it.**

Aston Martin strongly recommend not to install any child seat on the front passenger seat of this vehicle.

In the event of a serious frontal or side collision the vehicle airbag system is designed to deploy, to provide **additional** protection for the front seat occupants.

If a forward facing child seat is to be used in the front passenger seat, follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions to secure the child seat and **move the passenger seat to its rearmost and lowest position.**

Child Seats

 **Warning:** *Do not seat a child aged 12 or younger, or weighing 79 lb (36 kg) or less in this vehicle without an appropriate child seat or booster cushion.*

Aston Martin does not recommend any child seats for this vehicle **which require the use of the vehicle seat belt.**

This vehicle provides passenger sensing (Refer to 'Advanced Restraints System', page 3.19) and a top tether for the installation of child seats (Refer to 'Tether Anchor', page 3.25).

Use of Child Safety Seats

Child safety seats must be in conformity with Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 213. Look for the statement on the box and seat.

Look for the following when selecting a child restraint system:

- It should have a label certifying that it meets the applicable Motor Vehicle Safety Standards
- Carefully read the instructions supplied with the restraint. Be sure you understand them and can install and use the device properly and safely in the vehicle

- Make sure that the child restraint system is appropriate for the child's weight and development. The label required by the standard or regulations, or instructions for infant restraints, usually provide this information
- An infant or child that is not properly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash. Seat belts are designed for adults and larger children; infants and smaller children must be restrained in an approved child safety seat.
- Children could be endangered in a crash if their child restraints are not properly secured in the vehicle.

If you choose to use a child safety seat, follow the manufacturers instructions. Never hold a baby or child on your lap while riding in the vehicle.

Tether Anchor

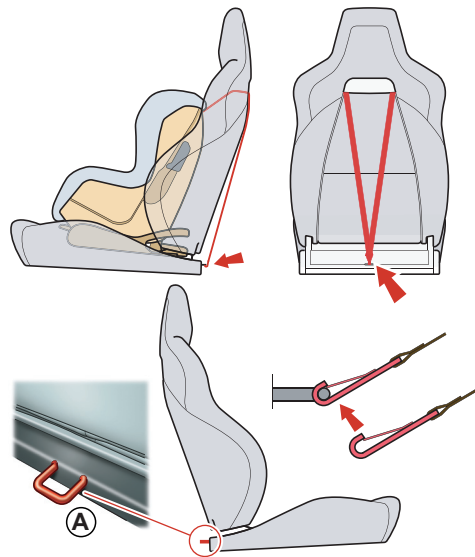
⚠ Warning: *Child seat anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by a correctly installed child seat. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.*

⚠ Warning: *Always follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions. Not following the child-seat manufacturer's instructions when installing the child seat is dangerous.*

The tether anchor point is located at the base, rear of the passenger seat (A).



Move the seat forward to access the tether anchor point.



Route the tether strap through the aperture in the seat back as shown. Engage the tether clip to the anchor point at the bottom of the passenger seat back as shown and make sure that the locking spring has fully closed to prevent accidental disengagement.

Always make sure that the tether strap length is adjusted to remove any slack.

Automatic Locking Retractors

 **Warning:** Always follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions. Not following the child-seat manufacturer's instructions when installing the child seat is dangerous.

This vehicle has Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) seat belts installed to the passenger seat.

This system is designed to securely hold child seats. The ALR system temporarily locks the seat belt that is securing a child seat.

Aston Martin does not recommend any child seats for this vehicle **which require the use of the vehicle seat belt** (Refer to 'Seat Belts', page 3.13).

ALR Operation

Gently pull out the seat belt until fully extended. The ALR system will only engage at the maximum extension point of the seat belt.

Thread the belt tongue through the child seat as instructed by the child seat manufacturer. Engage the tongue into the belt buckle.

Adjust the tongue position on the belt, if necessary, to make sure that the lower belt run is tight and then allow the upper run of the seat belt to fully retract until the child seat is securely held. The ALR system will be heard 'clicking' as the seat belt retracts.

When fully retracted, pull down on the upper run of the belt to check that the ALR lock has engaged.

 When parked on an incline, the seat belt may lock as it is withdrawn. This is not a fault. If the mechanism locks, release the seat belt tension and then pull the seat belt very gently to avoid operation of the inertia lock.

The ALR system will disengage when the seat belt is fully retracted. The seat belt may then be worn when required as a normal seat belt. Once the ALR is disengaged, the seat belt must be fully extended to re-engage the system on the next occasion that a child seat is installed.

Deployable Rollbars

(Roadster)

⚠ Warning: Do not place any objects on the top of the deployable rollbar covers.

⚠ Warning: Do not allow any person to sit on the deployable rollbar covers at any time.

⚠ Warning: Do not attempt to service or modify the deployable rollbar system.

⚠ Warning: Do not attempt to reset the deployable rollbar system if it deploys.

⚠ Warning: If the roof is closed and the deployable rollbars deploy they will break through the rear glass.

The deployable rollbar system comprises an electronic roll sensor unit integrated into the main crash sensor and two 'U' shaped roll bars, concealed behind the rear seat (Refer to 'Deployable Rollbars', page 6.10).

If the deployable rollbar system has been deployed, proceed to your nearest Aston Martin Dealer to check for any damage and to reset the system.

Interior Storage

Glovebox

Glovebox release (A)

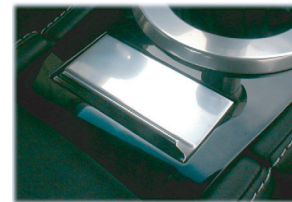
Guidebook storage



Trinket box

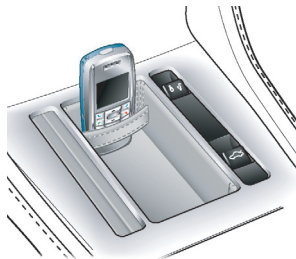
(If installed on your vehicle).

Lift the lid to open.



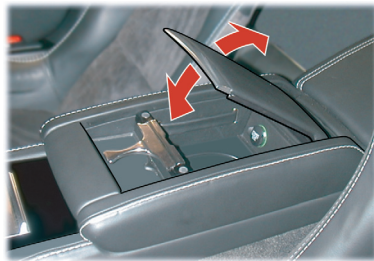
Trinket tray, including mobile phone pocket, coin or credit card holder.

(SportShift transmission only).



Armrest Cubby Box

Including iPod and USB ports and an accessory socket.



Cup Holder

A Cup holder is provided in the Armrest Cubby box. The holder rotates through 180°.

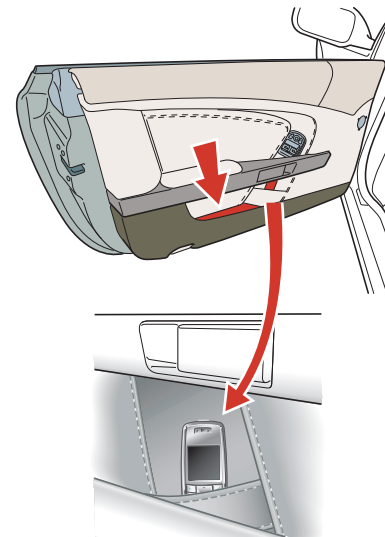
⚠ Warning: Only use the cup holder when safe to do so.

⚠ Warning: Do not place hot drinks in the cup holder while the vehicle is in motion. There is a risk of scalding.

⚠ Warning: Use soft cups only. Hard cups or objects can cause personal injury in a collision.



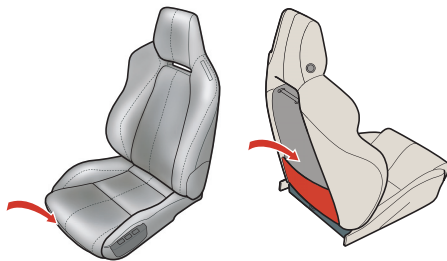
Door pockets, including mobile phone pocket.



Document pocket

(Driver and passenger seat).

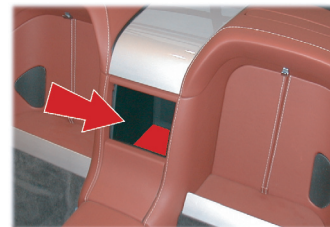
Do not place items in these pockets if a child restraint system is being used (Refer to 'Advanced Restraints System', page 3.19).



Rear Cubby box

(Roadster Only)

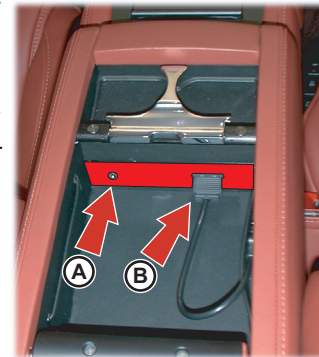
Including accessory socket.



Media Devices

A dedicated Apple iPod₁ player port is provided in the armrest cubby box, along with a USB port for the connection of USB storage devices and an auxiliary socket for other media devices.

After connecting the Apple iPod or USB storage device it can then be operated via the vehicle audio system (Refer to 'iPod and USB Functions', page 8.26).



₁ iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc.

Music devices connected using the Auxiliary socket will not be operated by the vehicle audio system (Refer to 'Auxiliary Functions', page 8.28) or have their batteries charged.

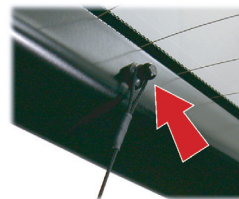
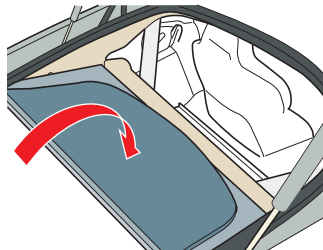
 A music device, connected by the auxiliary socket, can be powered using the accessory socket mounted in the armrest cubby box.

 iPod batteries and USB devices which require a power source are charged while connected.

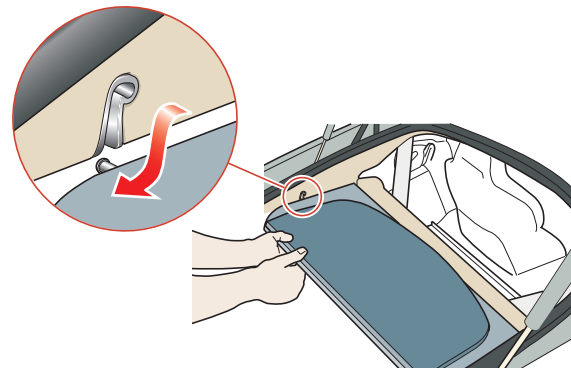
Trunk Cover

To Remove

Detach the two trunk lid cords and fold the rear section forward.

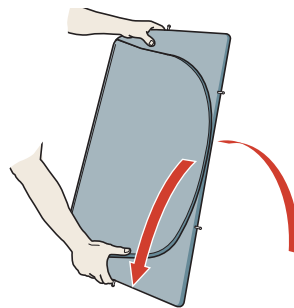
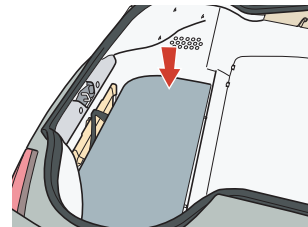


Slightly raise the trunk cover up and then back. Lower and remove the cover to the rear.



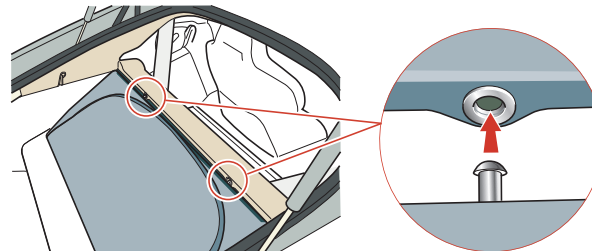
Storage

Keep the rear section folded and turn the trunk cover 180°. Place the cover in the rear section of the trunk.



To Install

Insert the trunk cover, from below, and locate the two rear pins.



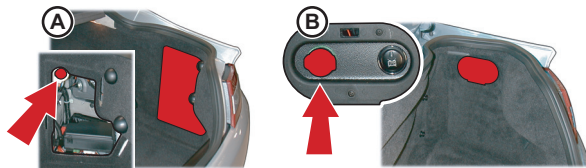
Raise the cover. Locate the two side pins up into the area provided in the trim panel. Slightly push forward and allow to drop into position. Install the two trunk lid cords.

⚠ Warning: *Damage to electrical circuits will result if more than 10 amps is drawn from the accessory socket. Only connect accessories which are designed for use in a motor vehicle.*

⚠ Warning: *Prolonged use of accessory socket when vehicle is stationary may seriously discharge battery.*

Accessory sockets are mounted in the armrest cubby box and the trunk right side wall and may be used to power any 12 volt vehicle accessory requiring a current of less than 10 amps. The trunk mounted accessory socket is a constant live.

 On vehicles installed with the non-smoking kit a third accessory socket is provided in the trinket box.



[A] - Coupe

[B] - Roadster

Read the manufacturer's instructions and make sure that you do not connect any device which would exceed current rating of the accessory socket.

 Roadster Only: An accessory socket is mounted in the rear cubby box.



Ashtray and Cigar Lighter

(If installed on your vehicle)

 **Warning:** The cigar lighter is heated to 'Red Heat' when in use. Take care to avoid burns. Do not allow children to play with the cigar lighter.

The cigar lighter may be used when the vehicle key is in position 'I' or 'II' in the Ignition Control. Push down until it clicks. The lighter will pop up when ready for use.



Remove the ashtray by opening the lid and pulling the glass tray upwards. Install the tray by placing it into position and push down.



Reading Lamps

Both reading lamps are controlled by the individual switches mounted on the Centre Stack (A).

Unless set to OFF or ON at A they will continue to operate up to four minutes after the ignition is set to OFF.



Electric Windows

⚠ Warning: *Misuse of the window switches, especially by children, can result in injury due to entrapment in the window closure. Drivers must advise all occupants of the possible danger and make sure that all obstructions are clear before raising the window.*

To raise and lower the windows the vehicle key must be at position 'I' or 'II' in the Ignition Control.

 *The windows can be operated up to one minute after the vehicle key is removed from the Ignition Control.*

Lower - Lightly press and release the window switch (A) to lower the window in stages. Press firmly and release to lower the window with one touch.

Raise - Lightly pull back and release the window switch (A) to raise the window in stages.

If power to the electric windows has been interrupted for any reason, they will fail to operate correctly until reset (Refer to 'Door Window Reset', page 11.44).



Door Sealing

⚠ Warning: *Make sure that all occupants are clear when the window mechanism is operating.*

A door sealing system is used to minimise wind noise and to make sure of a watertight seal of the door glass to the seals around the top of the door opening. When a door is opened, the window glass automatically lowers a few millimeters to clear the door seal. As the door is closed, the window glass automatically, after a pause, raises against the body frame rubber seals.

Coat Hooks

(Coupe Only)

Coat hooks are provided behind the driver and passenger seats (A).



Umbrella

(If installed on your vehicle)

An umbrella, complete with holder, is provided in the rear of the trunk.



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN

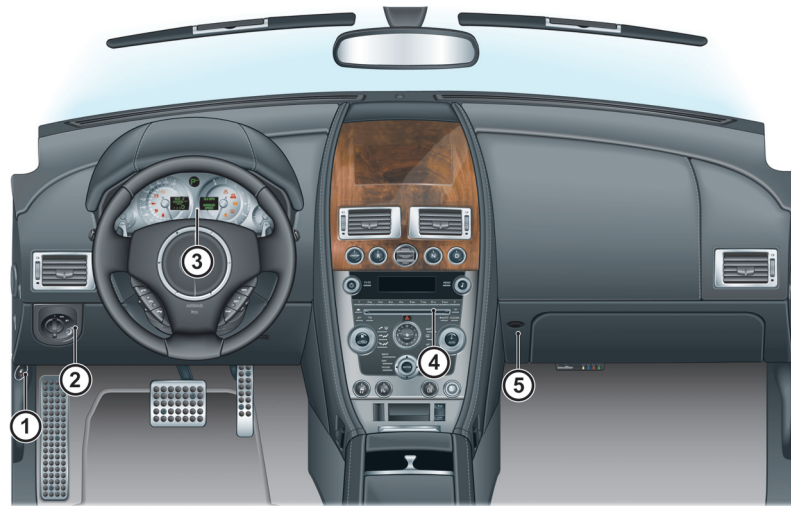
Controls

Contents

Overview	4.2
Instrument Cluster	4.4
Information and Warning Symbols.....	4.6
Centre Stack.....	4.10
Ignition Control	4.12
Stalk Controls	4.14
Master Lamp Switch	4.16
Filler Flap Emergency Release.....	4.18
Vehicle Horn.....	4.18
Trip Computer	4.19
Cruise Control	4.20
Ambient Temperature	4.23
Tyre Pressure Monitoring.....	4.23

Overview

SportShift Transmission



Manual Transmission



[1] Fuel Flap Release- Press to open the fuel flap. Close the fuel flap by pressing down on the flap until the lock engages.

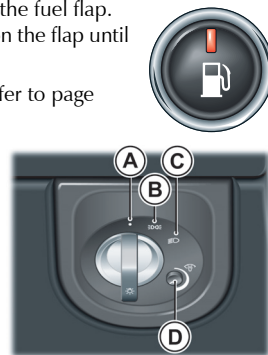
Filler Flap Emergency Release - (Refer to page 4.18).

[2] Master Lamp Switch-

A - All external lamps OFF.

B - Side lamps, side marker lamps, rear lamps and registration plate lamps ON.

C - Headlamps ON, in addition to the side, side marker, rear and registration plate lamps.



D - The level of brightness can be reduced or increased by using the rotary control. Push the rotary control in and release to enable the control. Push in and release to lock the control.

[3] Instrument Cluster- (Refer to page 4.4).

[4] Centre Stack- (Refer to page 4.10).

[5] Glovebox release- Press to open the glovebox. Push the glovebox lid up to close.



ASTON MARTIN

Instrument Cluster

[1] Fuel Gauge- Shows how much fuel is in the fuel tank. Refuel as soon as possible when the low fuel symbol comes ON.

[2] Speedometer- Shows vehicle road speed.

[3] Message Centre (Left)- Shows the following:

Trip Meter - The Trip Meter shows distances travelled since last reset of trip meters T1 and T2 (B). Toggle between T1 and T2 by pressing **T1/T2** (A) for less than three seconds. Press **T1/T2** for more than three seconds to reset the trip meter on show.



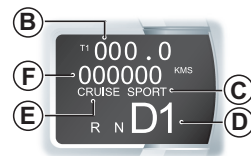
Sport Mode Status (SportShift Only) - Shows 'SPORT' (C) by default. When the SportShift Comfort feature is active 'Sport' will go out (Refer to 'SportShift Features', page 5.9).

Cruise Status - Shows 'CRUISE' (E) when Cruise Control is ON (If installed on your vehicle (Refer to 'Cruise Control', page 4.20)).

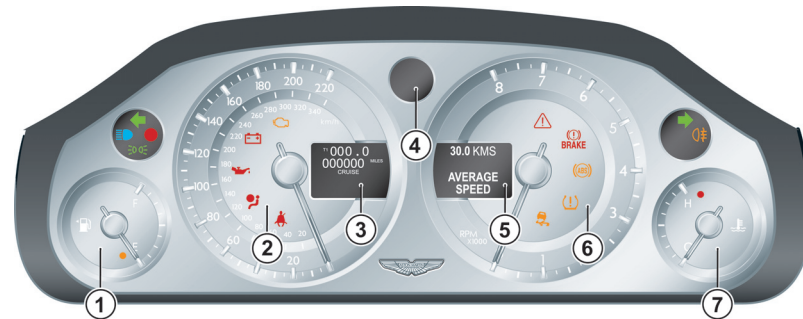
Odometer - Shows the total distance covered by the vehicle (F).

Gear Range (SportShift Only) - Shows current gear selection (D). Possible transmission positions and gear selection are in bold. Items not in bold are not selectable.

SportShift



Manual



[4] Gear Indication Display-

Manual Transmission - Gear Shift Indication Display (GSID) - Shows maximum revs. in the current gear. A red 'R' will show when the transmission is in reverse (Refer to 'Manual Transmission', page 5.12).

Sportshift - Gear Position Indication Display (GPID) - Shows the current gear when in Paddle Shift mode. Shows 'D' when in Auto Drive mode (Refer to 'SportShift Transmission', page 5.5). A red 'R' will show when the transmission is in reverse.

[5] Message Centre (Right)- Shows the following:

Driver Information and Warnings - Messages show if an unsatisfactory condition is detected. Message priority is shown by a red or an amber triangle above the message display.



- **Red** - Potential personal danger or danger of damage to the vehicle
- **Amber** - Advisory, shows possible degraded vehicle performance

Warning messages will show when the ignition is ON and will cycle automatically. View or acknowledge messages at any time by pressing the **READ** button (F).



Service Intervals - 'Time for Regular Service' will be shown when a regular vehicle service is due. This message will show at ignition ON (for two minutes) until the regular service has taken place.

Trip Computer - The message centre (right) defaults to the trip computer when there are no messages to show (Refer to 'Trip Computer', page 4.19).

[6] Tachometer- Shows engine speed in revolutions per minute x 1000.

[7] Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge- Shows the temperature of the engine coolant.

Information and Warning Symbols



[1]  **Low Fuel Warning-** Comes ON when only approximately 2 Gall (9 ltr) of fuel is available. At 2 Gall (9 ltr) and 1 Gall (5 ltr) an audible 'beep' will sound and the 'estimated distance' message will show (for 20 seconds) in the message centre (right).



[2] **Left Turn Direction Indicators-** Flashes with the indicator or hazard warning lamps (Ignition ON).



[3] **Headlamps-** Shows that the main beam of the headlamps is in use.



[4] **Side lamps-** Shows that the side lamps, dip or main beams are ON.



[5] **PATS-** If this symbol flashes continuously at ignition ON the vehicle will stay immobilized. If the symbol is ON continuously at ignition ON the vehicle will start but PATS has gone into 'Fail Safe' mode (Refer to 'Passive Anti-Theft System', page 2.13).



Warning: Stop immediately if the Check Engine symbol flashes, do not drive the vehicle. Contact your Aston Martin Dealer.



[6] **Check Engine-** Steady amber shows a fault in the engine management system. Continue driving only if there are no audible, visible or physical signs of degraded engine performance. Consult your Aston Martin Dealer as soon as possible. Flashing amber shows a major fault in the engine management system. Stop immediately. Contact your Aston Martin Dealer.



[7] **Ignition Warning-** Comes ON when the ignition is set to ON and goes OFF when the engine is started and battery charging commences. Comes ON if battery charging fails whilst driving.



[8] **Oil Pressure Warning-** Comes ON when the engine oil pressure falls below minimum. Do not continue driving if this symbol stays ON. Contact your Aston Martin Dealer immediately.

⚠ Warning: Do not drive the vehicle if the SRS warning symbol stays ON. Have the system checked by an Aston Martin Dealer.

[9]  Supplementary Restraint System- At vehicle key position 'I' and 'II' or on vehicle start up, this symbol comes ON for a few seconds as a readiness sign. If it does not come ON, or if it does not go OFF after a few seconds, or if it comes ON whilst driving, the airbag self diagnostic system has detected a fault.



⚠ Warning: Do not drive the vehicle if the seat belt warning symbol stays ON. Have the system checked by an Aston Martin Dealer.

[10]  Seat Belt Warning- This warning symbol will come ON and a chime will sound for six seconds if the driver's seat belt is not fastened when the ignition is set to ON.

[11]  Warning Triangle- Shows Red or Amber depending on warning or information message priority.

 **Warning:** If the brake warning symbol stays ON, after fully releasing the parking brake, do not drive the vehicle. Have the system checked by an Aston Martin Dealer.

 **[12] BRAKE Brake Warning-** At ignition ON this symbol comes ON when the parking brake is applied and goes OFF when the parking brake is fully released. If the symbol stays ON, after fully releasing the parking brake, it shows that either the brake fluid level is low or that the brake pads require regular maintenance (Refer to 'Footbrake', page 5.12).

 **Warning:** If the ABS warning symbol stays ON, do not drive the vehicle. Have the system checked by an Aston Martin Dealer.

 **[13] ABS Warning-** If this symbol stays ON or comes ON while driving there is a fault in the ABS control circuits. Continue driving only if there are no audible, visible or physical signs of degraded brake performance. Consult your Aston Martin Dealer as soon as possible if this symbol stays ON.

 **[14] Tire Pressure-** During vehicle start up, this symbol will come ON, briefly, as a readiness sign. It will come ON again if tire pressure falls below specification (Refer to 'Tyre Pressure Monitoring', page 4.23).

 **[15] Dynamic Stability Control-** If the DSC symbol stays ON at engine start up or it comes ON whilst driving, the DSC system has detected a fault. A DSC fault message will be shown in the message centre (right). Consult your Aston Martin Dealer as soon as possible (Refer to 'Dynamic Stability Control (DSC)', page 5.15).

 **[16] Right Turn Direction Indicators-** Flashes with the indicator or hazard warning lamps (Ignition ON).

 **[17] Rear Fog-** Shows if the rear fog lamps are ON.



[18] High Coolant Temp- Shows when engine coolant temperature exceeds 248°F (120°C).

Low Outside Temperature

⚠ Warning: Even if the 'Ice Warning' message does not show, there is no guarantee that at low temperatures the road is free from ice.

At temperatures below 39°F (4°C) the message 'Ice Warning' is shown in the message centre (right), this shows to the driver that frost or ice is likely to form on road surfaces. The amber warning triangle



will also come ON.

The the message and warning triangle will continue to show until the outside temperature rises to a safer level.

Warning Symbols

As the ignition is set to ON, the electronic control units complete a self check to make sure of correct operation.



During these checks the following symbols will come ON for five seconds and 'System Check' will appear on the message centre (right).

Under normal circumstances most warning symbols will go OFF at the end of the individual system check if system checks are satisfactory.



ASTON MARTIN

Centre Stack

[1] Satellite Navigation Screen- Opens when Satellite Navigation system is ON (if installed on your vehicle) (Refer to 'Satellite Navigation', page 10.1).

[2] Ignition Control- Insert the vehicle key for ignition (Refer to 'Ignition Control', page 4.12).

[3] SportShift Controls- Comfort, Reverse, Neutral and Auto Drive transmission control buttons (Refer to 'SportShift Transmission', page 5.5).



[4] Display- Shows options, menus and information.

[5] Clock- To set the time press **MENU**. Go to *Car settings > Clock*.

[6] Read- Press to view or acknowledge messages.

[7] Audio Controls- (Refer to 'Audio', page 8.1).

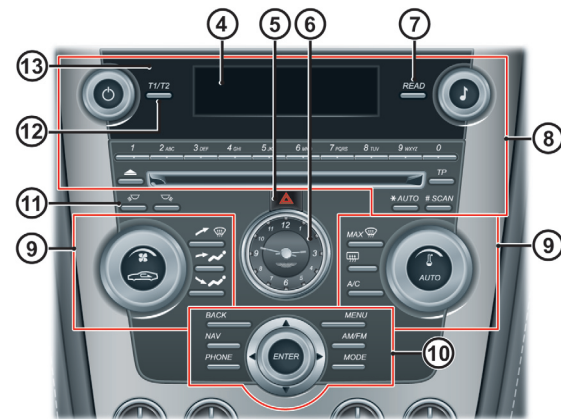
[8] Climate Control- (Refer to 'Climate Control', page 7.1).

[9] Mode and Menu NAVIGATION- Select functions and move back in the menus. Use the joystick to navigate for menus, music tracks, radio stations. Press to accept.

[10] Reading Lamps- Driver and passenger reading lamps.

[11] Hazard Warning Lamps- Press to set the hazard warning lamps ON or OFF.

[12] T1/T2- Select between two trip meters (Refer to 'Trip Computer', page 4.19)



⚠ Warning: Before installing a child seat, the passenger airbag must be set to OFF.

[13] passenger Airbag Status- Shows the passenger airbag status (Refer to 'Advanced Restraints System', page 3.19).

[14] Rear Fog Lamps- Used in conjunction with the dipped beam when fog is causing restricted visibility. They **must** be set to OFF when visibility clears to reduce glare to the drivers of following vehicles.

[15] Lamy Pen Holder- Push the pen in and release to access the pen.

[16] Master Vehicle Lock- Press to lock both doors and disable the trunk lock and the trunk open switch. Pull up to unlock. (Refer to 'Master Lock Switch', page 2.7).

Manual Transmission



[17] Trunk Lid Open- Pull up to open the trunk lid. On the Roadster this switch becomes the roof open and close switch (Refer to 'Convertible Roof', page 6.1).

[18] Dynamic Stability Control- The DSC system is always ON when the ignition is ON. Press and hold for approximately four seconds for OFF. Press and release to set to ON. (Refer to 'Dynamic Stability Control (DSC)', page 5.15).

[19] Parking Assist- Defaults to ON at each ignition cycle. Press and release to set ON or OFF. Comes ON when parking assist is OFF. (Refer to 'Rear Parking Assist', page 5.19).

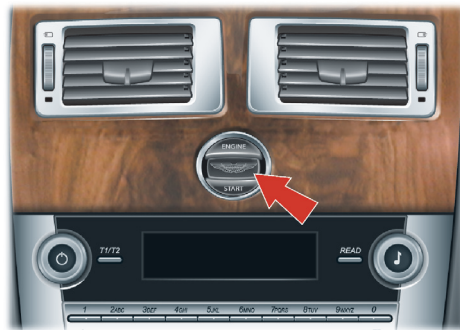
(Refer to 'Front and Rear Parking Assist', page 5.21).

Automatic Transmission



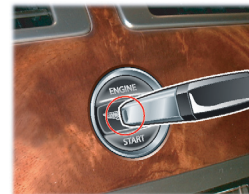
Ignition Control

To access vehicle functions and to start the engine, the vehicle key must be inserted in to the Ignition Control.



⚠ Warning: *Only use the vehicle key in the Ignition Control. Do not place any objects, including fingers, into the Ignition Control other than the vehicle key. Objects other than the vehicle key may cause the Ignition Control to fail.*

⚠ *The vehicle key must only be inserted into the Ignition Control with the two indents first, as shown. Attempting to insert the larger end first the key may damage the Ignition Control.*

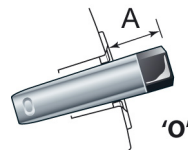


Position '0' (Ignition OFF)

Auxiliaries OFF (Audio, Satellite Navigation, Hands-Free phone not available), steering lock engaged. Seats can be adjusted.

Gently insert the vehicle key, indents first, into the Ignition Control. Press in until the key clicks into place (approximately 20 mm (0.75 in) A) then release. The key is docked at this point.

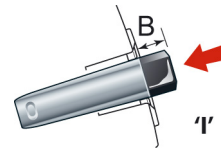
Remove by pulling the vehicle key from the Ignition Control.



Position 'I' (Ignition OFF and Accessories ON)

Auxiliaries ON (Audio, Satellite Navigation, Hands-Free phone available), steering lock engaged.

- If already in position '0' gently press the key until the infotainment centre and the instrument cluster lamps come ON (a further 10 mm (0.5 in) (B)) and release for position 'I'.
 - Or insert the key into the Ignition Control and move straight to position 'I'. Press in until the infotainment centre and the instrument cluster lamps come ON.
- Remove by pulling the vehicle key from the Ignition Control.



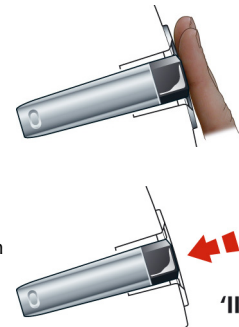
Position 'II' (Ignition ON)

Ignition and all other electrical systems ON, steering lock OFF.

! Do not depress the brake (automatic) clutch (manual) pedal unless intending to start the engine.

 Insert the key to position 'II' by using the flat of a finger, as shown.

- If the key is already in position '0' or 'I' gently press the key until it is flush with the Ignition Control bezel and release.
- Or insert the key into the Ignition Control and move straight to position 'II'. Gently press the key until it is flush with the Ignition Control bezel and release.



 To start the engine from this position fully press the brake (automatic) clutch (manual) pedal down and press the key fully in.

 If the vehicle key is pressed **fully** into the Ignition Control and released for position 'II', the key must be returned to position 'I' to start the engine.

The Instrument cluster lights will come ON, the vehicle systems will wake up and the steering lock will release.

Remove the vehicle key from position 'II' by pressing the key fully in **twice**, without depressing the brake (automatic) clutch (manual) pedal, and release. The key will gently return to position 'I'. Pull the key from the Ignition Control. Once in position 'I' after 10 seconds the steering lock will engage.

Starting the Engine

(Refer to 'Starting the Engine', page 5.2).

Preventing Unnecessary Battery Drain

If the vehicle key is left in the Ignition Control (position '0'), some vehicle circuits will stay ON and unnecessary current will be drawn from the battery.

A temporary label is installed on all new vehicles to remind drivers to remove the vehicle key whenever the ignition is set to OFF (Refer to 'Vehicle Battery Charge', page 11.29).

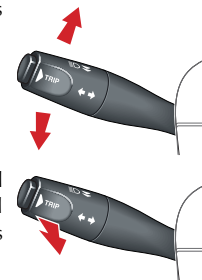


Stalk Controls

Left Side Stalk

Turn Signals - Press up for a right turn, press down for a left turn. Returns to the centre position on completion of a manoeuvre. Hold against spring pressure to show a lane change.

Main and Dipped Beam - Pull forwards and latch for main beam. Pull forwards again and latch to return to dipped beam. Pull forwards and release without latching, at any time while the vehicle key is in the Ignition Control, to flash main beam ON and OFF.



Pull forwards and release without latching, when the vehicle key is removed, to start Homesafe (Refer to 'Homesafe', page 2.11).

Trip Computer - Repeated pressing of the trip function button (A) moves through the trip computer displays. (Refer to 'Trip Computer', page 4.19).



Right Side Stalk

Windshield Wiper Control -

[1] - OFF.

[2] - Intermittent Wipe.

[3] - Normal Speed Wipe.

[4] - Fast Wipe.

Demand Wipe - Pull the stalk forwards.

 The windshield wipers will return to their park position if the ignition is set to OFF or the hood is unlatched, regardless of the right stalk position.



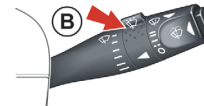
Speed Sensitive Wipe - If the wipers are at fast wipe, when the vehicle slows down (below 7 mph (11 km/h)) the wipers will go to normal wipe speed.

If the wipers are at normal speed when the vehicle slows down (below 7 mph (11 km/h)) the wipers will go to intermittent wipe (position 2).

As soon as the vehicle speeds up (above 9.5 mph (15 km/h)) the wipers will return to their original setting.

Windshield Wiper Delay Control -

Intermittent wipe time delay increases or decreases in six steps (B). Sixth position gives the shortest delay between wipes.



Windshield Washer Control - Press the button (C) for more than one second to operate the windshield washers.

Operation continues until the button is released. When released the washers

stop immediately but the wipers

continue for a few strokes, ending with a pause and then a final wipe.

If used during normal wiper operation, the wipers operate continually irrespective of the washer operation.

Headlamp Washers₁ - Headlamp washers will operate automatically, once per journey (each ignition ON), if the windshield washers are operated and the headlamps are ON.



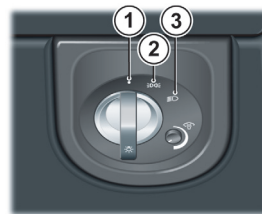
Master Lamp Switch

! *If Homesafe has been operated with the Master Lamp Switch at position three (headlamps ON), the main beam will stay ON. Make sure the Master Lamp Switch is at position one before exiting (Refer to 'Homesafe', page 2.11).*

[1] - All external lamps OFF.

[2] - Side, side marker, rear and registration plate lamps ON.

[3] - With the vehicle key at position 'II' in the Ignition Control, Headlamps ON, in addition to the side, side marker, rear and registration plate lamps.



Lamps ON Warning

If the vehicle side lamps are ON, and the drivers door is opened after the vehicle key has been removed from the Ignition Control, an audible warning will sound for a period of five minutes. To stop the audible warning set the lamps to OFF. The audible warning will also stop when the driver's door is shut - the lamps will stay ON.

Day Time Running Lamps

(Canada Only)

The dipped beams and side lights are permanently ON.

₁. Installed with HID bulb Dipped beam.

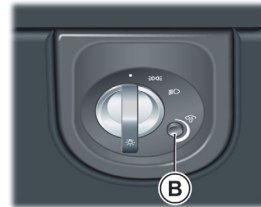
Instrument Brightness

During the daylight hours the level of instrument brightness defaults to maximum brightness and is not adjustable.



During the twilight and night time hours a Twilight sensor (A (located in the Centre Stack)) automatically reduces the level of brightness to a preset level.

The level of brightness can be further reduced by using the rotary control (B). If the brightness level has been adjusted, the twilight and night time brightness level will return to the previous setting on the rotary control, each time the sensor picks up the twilight hours.

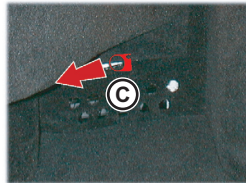
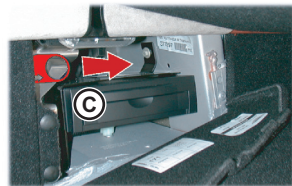
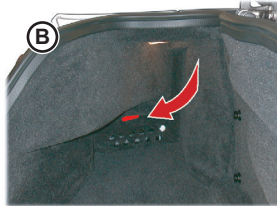
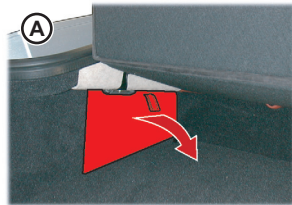


Push the rotary control in and release to enable the control. Push in and release to lock the control.

 *If the Twilight sensor is covered the level of brightness will stay low as if in night time mode.*

Filler Flap Emergency Release

If the filler flap will not open when the release button is pressed, open the filler flap manually. Reach through the left trunk trim to access the manual fuel filler flap release. Pull the lever (C) to open the filler flap.



[a] - Coupe

[B] - Roadster

Vehicle Horn

To sound the horn press the centre pad of the steering wheel at any of the positions shown.



Trip Computer

Press the button (A) for less than three seconds cycles through the trip computer functions one at a time. Trip Computer information is viewed in the message centre (right).

 If an information message shows, after reading and acting on the information provided press the Read button (B) to return to the trip display.



Range - Estimated travel distance with fuel available (no reset). The minimum distance shown will read 15 mile (20 km). Below this distance will show '---'.

Average Fuel - Average fuel consumption since last reset. Press A for more than three seconds but less than five seconds to reset. Press A for five seconds or more will reset both the average fuel consumption and average speed. 'Infocenter is Reset' will be shown in the message centre (right). Press the **READ** button to acknowledge the message.

30
MILES
TO EMPTY
TANK

30.0 MPH
AVERAGE

Instantaneous Fuel - Shows the fuel consumption over the last three seconds of travel (no reset).

Average Speed - Shows the average speed since last reset. Press A for more than three seconds but less than five seconds to reset. Press A for five seconds or more will reset both the average speed and average fuel consumption. 'Infocenter is Reset' will be shown in the message centre (right). Press the **READ** button to acknowledge the message.

30.0 MPG
INSTANT.

30.0 MPH
AVERAGE
SPEED

Present Speed - Shows the current vehicle speed.

 *Driver aid only.*

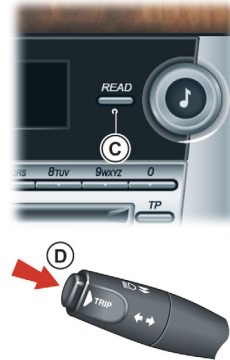
 *Trip computer default screen.*

Blank Screen - Blank screen will show.



Display Units

With the ignition ON press the **READ** button (C) and the Trip Computer button (D) together for three seconds to change the trip computer display units.



Cruise Control

(If installed on your vehicle)

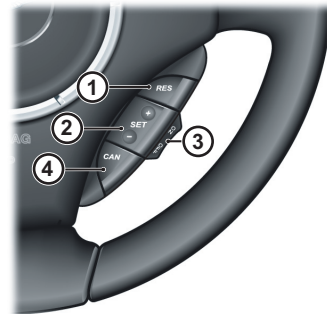
Cruise Control can be used to maintain a selected vehicle speed, above 20 mph (32 km/h), without having to use the accelerator.

[1] RES- Resume the set speed retained in memory.

[2] SET- Set the speed, accelerate or decelerate.

[3] On/Off- Sets Cruise Control ON and OFF.

[4] CAN- Cancels Cruise Control but keeps the set speed in memory.



Operation

 **Warning:** Only use cruise control when conditions are favorable, for example, straight, dry, open roads with light traffic.

Use the **ON/OFF** switch (3) to set Cruise Control ON and OFF. When Cruise Control is ON 'CRUISE' will show in the message centre (left) (Refer to 'Instrument Cluster', page 4.4).

When travelling at the desired speed, which must be above 20 mph (32 km/h), press **SET** (+ or -) (2). Cruise Control will engage and maintain that speed without the need to use the accelerator pedal.

 Under certain conditions Cruise Control will automatically set to OFF (Refer to 'Cruise Control Automatic OFF', page 4.22).

 Cruise Control will automatically disengage when the brake pedal is pressed or when the vehicle speed falls below 20 mph (32 km/h).

Changing the Set Speed

There are three ways to change the set speed:

- Accelerate or decelerate to the desired speed then press **SET** (+ or -).
- Accelerate or decelerate to the desired speed by pressing and holding **SET** (+ or -) until the desired speed is obtained, then release.
- Accelerate or decelerate to the desired speed in steps of 1 mph (2 km/h) by briefly pressing and releasing **SET** (+ or -) until the desired speed is obtained.

Resuming the Set Speed

⚠ **RES should only be used if the driver is aware of the set speed and intends to return to it.**

⚠ **It is not recommended to resume set speed when a low gear is selected as excessive engine speeds will occur.**

📖 Cruise Control will not resume at speeds below 22 mph (35 km/h). **RES** will not operate if the ignition has been set to OFF.

If the vehicle is accelerated above the set speed, then the set speed will be resumed when the accelerator pedal is released.

If **CAN** (4) is pressed, or the brake or clutch pedal is pressed, the Cruise Control will disengage but the set speed memory will be kept. Press **RES** (1) and the vehicle will return to the set speed.

Cruise Control Automatic OFF

Cruise Control will automatically set to OFF and clear the memory when:

- The ignition is set to OFF
- A fault occurs. The Cruise Control system will set to OFF and cannot be used until the fault is cleared
- The Parking Brake is applied
- Maximum vehicle speed is reached

Cruise Control will automatically set to OFF but the set speed will stay in the memory when:

- The **CAN** button is pressed
- The brake pedal is pressed
- Vehicle speed falls below 22 mph (35 km/h)

- Neutral, Park or Reverse gear positions are selected
- The difference between the actual and set speed is too great
- When the set speed is above 90 mph (144 km/h); Cruise Control will disengage automatically after approximately 20 minutes
- The accelerator pedal is used to accelerate beyond the set speed for too long a period

Ambient Temperature

The ambient temperature (outside temperature) is shown in the top right corner of the Infotainment centre display.

 If the vehicle has been travelling a while and then is stopped in a shaded or enclosed area the ambient temperature may rise, this is due to the heat from the engine bay. The ambient temperature display will show the true ambient temperature once the vehicle is moving again or the engine bay cools down.

 If required the display units can be changed from °C to °F or °F to °C (Refer to 'Display Units', page 7.7).

Tyre Pressure Monitoring

 **Warning: Driving on a significantly under-inflated tyre causes the tyre to overheat and can lead to tyre failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tyre tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.**

Each tyre should be checked monthly when cold and set to the correct pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tyre inflation pressure label (if your vehicle has tyres of a different size than the size shown on the vehicle placard or tyre inflation pressure label, you should make sure of the correct tyre pressure for those tyres).

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) that sets a tyre pressure telltale (warning) symbol (A) to ON when one or more of the tyres is significantly under or over inflated. At the same time an image of vehicle in the message centre (right) will show which tire(s) have low or high air pressure and the current tyre pressure. When the tyre pressure telltale comes ON, stop and check your tyres as soon as possible, and inflate or deflate them to the correct pressure.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for correct tyre maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tyre pressures, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to set the TPMS tyre pressure telltale symbol to ON.

Malfunction Telltale

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction telltale to show when the system is not operating correctly. The TPMS malfunction telltale is combined with the tyre pressure telltale.

When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then stay ON. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.



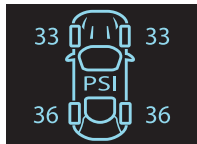
When the malfunction telltale is ON, the system may not be able to detect or send tyre pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions can occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tyres or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from operating correctly.

Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tyres or wheels on your vehicle to make sure that the replacement or alternate tyres and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function correctly.

Operation

⚠ When a tyre pressure warning is detected reduce the vehicle speed to an appropriate safe level and stop at the first safe and convenient place to inspect the tire(s).

At each ignition ON there is a short delay before tyre pressures are received, from the wheel and tyre transmitters, and shown in the message centre (right).



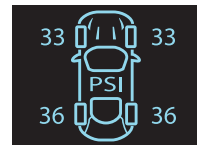
If the tyre telltale symbol comes ON while driving, reduce speed to 48 km/h (30 mph) and stop in safe place as soon as possible. Check the status of the tire(s) in the message centre (right):

Telltale Symbol

Constant

Message centre (right)

CHECK TYRES (for ten seconds) followed by an image which shows which tire(s) is affected and the current tyre pressures.



Fault

Tyre pressure below or above specification

Action

Check the tyre pressure of the affected tire(s). Set the tyre pressure to the manufacturer's recommended pressure, as shown on the tyre label located on the edge of driver's door or the B-Pillar.

Telltale Symbol

Flashing for 75 seconds then constant

Message centre (right)

TYRE SYSTEM FAULT (for ten seconds) followed by an image which shows which tire(s) is affected and the current tyre pressures or which transmitter is at fault.



Fault

System failure or tire transmitter fault

Possible Cause

- The TPMS sensors have become defective
- Wheels and tires have been installed which do not have TPMS sensors
- An unapproved accessory is interfering with the TPMS
- A general fault has been detected in the TPMS

Action

Continue at a reduced speed of 48 km/h (30 mph) maximum. Have the control unit and the tyre transmitters checked at the earliest opportunity. Consult your Aston Martin Dealer

Display Units

The display can be set to show metric or imperial units.

With the ignition ON press the **READ** button (C) and the Trip Computer button (D) together for three seconds to change the trip computer display units.



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN

Driving

Contents

Driving Safety.....5.2	Anti-lock Braking System (ABS).....5.13
Starting the Engine5.2	Parking Brake5.14
SportShift Transmission5.5	Dynamic Stability Control (DSC).....5.15
Auto Drive Buttons.....5.6	Fuel Filling.....5.18
Paddle Shift.....5.7	Catalytic Converters5.19
SportShift Features5.9	Rear Parking Assist.....5.19
Clutch Warnings.....5.10	Front and Rear Parking Assist.....5.21
Manual Transmission.....5.12	Driving Techniques5.23
Footbrake.....5.12	

Driving Safety

Always wear your seat belt

- Never drive under the influence of alcohol or drugs
- Always obey all speed and traffic laws and regulations. Never drive faster than the posted speed limit or than conditions allow
- Be particularly careful driving on slippery or wet surfaces
- This vehicle is a high performance vehicle and has handling characteristics you may not be accustomed to. Familiarize yourself with the vehicle and always drive prudently, being aware of your own limitations and the limitations of the vehicle. As with other vehicles of this type, failure to operate the vehicle properly can result in accident and injury
- Follow the maintenance schedule prescribed in this guide
- Never allow the vehicle to be driven by inexperienced drivers

Starting the Engine

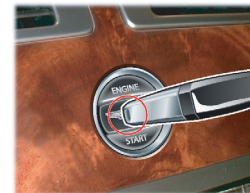
⚠ Warning: Only use the vehicle key in the Ignition Control. Do not place any objects, including fingers, into the Ignition Control other than the vehicle key. Objects other than the vehicle key may cause the Ignition Control to fail.

⚠ In extreme low temperatures ((-20°C (4°F) and below) do not allow the engine to 'rev' above 4000 rpm, while at standstill or when moving off, until the coolant temperature gauge reaches normal operating temperature. Revving the engine before fully warmed up may cause severe engine and transaxle damage.

⚠ In extreme low temperatures ((-20°C (4°F) and below) Aston Martin strongly recommend the use of engine block heaters and an oil reservoir tank heater. Refer to your Aston Martin dealer for details.

⚠ Do not press the vehicle key while driving. If the key is pressed in and released the engine will stop. If the key is removed from the Ignition Control while driving the engine will stop but the steering lock will not engage until the vehicle has come to a complete stop.

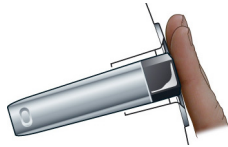
⚠ The vehicle key must only be inserted into the Ignition Control with the two indents first, as shown. Attempting to insert the larger end first the key may damage the Ignition Control.



! When starting the engine from cold allow the engine to run at idle speed for ten seconds before engaging a gear. This enables the SportShift system to complete a system check and maintains optimum SportShift performance.

 Make sure that you are wearing appropriate footwear to efficiently operate the control pedals. Make sure that the pedal movement is not restricted by floor mats or other objects trapped beneath pedals.

 Insert the key to position 'II' by using the flat of a finger, as shown.



Check that the parking brake is applied. Insert the vehicle key into the Ignition Control and gently press the key until it is flush with the Ignition Control bezel and release (position 'II').

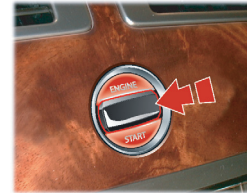
Fully press the:

SportShift Only - Brake pedal down.

Manual Only - Clutch pedal down.

The Ignition Control will show red.

Press the key fully into the Ignition Control, hold in until the engine starts and release.



 The engine will not start until the Ignition Control shows red. The Ignition Control will show red (Ignition Control active) only if the brake (SportShift) or clutch (Manual) pedal is fully pressed down and the steering lock has released.

The vehicle key will sit flush with the Ignition Control bezel while the engine is running. The Ignition Control will show a white light when the engine is running, and then fade out.

If the engine fails to start the vehicle key must be returned to position 'I' to crank the engine again.



Press the key fully in, without depressing the brake (SportShift) or clutch (manual) pedal, and release. The key will gently return to position 'I'. Start the engine start procedure again.



SportShift Transmission: *If the transmission is in Neutral then first gear will be selected at ignition OFF. If the transmission is in First or Reverse gear, the transmission will stay in the selected gear at ignition OFF. As the vehicle key is depressed and before the engine is started the transmission selects Neutral selected and the GPID will show 'N'.*

Engine Quick Start

1. Check that the parking brake is applied.
2. Fully press the brake (SportShift) or clutch (Manual) pedal down.

3. Insert the vehicle key into the Ignition Control and press the key fully in, hold in until the engine starts then release.

When moving straight to engine start the vehicle system will take short time (approximately 1.4 seconds) to complete a system check and release the steering lock before allowing the engine to crank.

Starting From Cold

The engine management system automatically compensates for cold or warm start conditions and makes appropriate adjustments to the fuel and air mixture and ignition timing.

Stopping the Engine

Press the vehicle key fully in and release. The engine will stop as the key returns to position 'I'. Withdraw the vehicle key from the Ignition Control.

SportShift Transmission - As the ignition is set to OFF First or Reverse gear (depending if the vehicle was set to OFF while in First or Reverse) will stay selected. If the transmission is in Neutral then first gear will be selected.



In the event that this vehicle is required to be towed, Neutral can be selected at ignition OFF (Refer to 'Transporting and Towing', page 11.26).

SportShift Transmission

Maximum Engine Speed

The maximum safe engine speed is 7,000 rpm. If this speed is exceeded, fuel supply to the engine is reduced. As the engine speed reduces back to a safe level, fuel supply is progressively restored.

 **Warning:** *Always secure the vehicle with the brakes when at rest. As with any transmission using a gearbox and clutch arrangement the vehicle will roll once the clutch is disengaged.*

Vehicles installed with the SportShift transmission have a manual gearbox and clutch arrangement. Most manual gearbox and clutch arrangements have a clutch pedal which when pressed lifts the clutch away from the flywheel, disengaging the engine from the drive line, enabling gearshifts.

The SportShift transmission uses a Transmission Control Module and an Electro-hydraulic control unit to replace the clutch pedal and make gearshifts.

Two modes of gear selection are available.

Auto Drive Mode

In Auto Drive mode gearshifts are made according to various driving parameters, i.e. road speed, current selected gear and accelerator demands. Forward, reverse and neutral gears are selected by using the Auto Drive buttons.

While in Auto Drive mode move to Paddle Shift mode at any time by pulling back pulling back on either the upshift or downshift gearshift paddles, mounted behind the steering wheel.

Auto Drive Buttons

Paddle Shift Mode

In Paddle Shift mode forward gears and Neutral are selected by using the paddles located behind the steering wheel. Reverse is selected by using the Auto Drive buttons.

While in Paddle Shift mode move to Auto Drive mode at any time by pressing the **DRIVE** button.

 *Neutral can also be selected by pressing the Neutral Auto Drive button.*



[1] COMFORT- The Comfort button can be pressed at any time while driving. Press once to access Comfort mode (button LED ON) and press again to exit (Refer to 'Comfort Button', page 5.10).

[2] REVERSE- When stationary and with the footbrake applied, press to select reverse.

[3] NEUTRAL- When stationary press to select neutral.

[4] DRIVE- When stationary and with the footbrake applied, press to select forward gears.

 *If the brake pedal is not pressed the message centre (right) will show '**Press Brake Pedal**' and an audible warning will sound.*



The message centre (left) shows the current gear selection (R, D1, D2, etc.), while the Gear Position Indicator Display (GPID) shows **D** (Drive) or **R** (Reverse) according to current gear selection.



As vehicle speed reduces the SportShift system will open and close the clutch and downshift as engine speed drops to below 750 rpm in each gear. At vehicle standstill first gear is engaged. As with any gearbox and clutch transmissions always apply the brakes when at a standstill.

 *If no pressure is detected on the accelerator pedal once the handbrake and footbrake are released then the transmission will enter the SportShift Crawl feature (Refer to 'SportShift Features', page 5.9).*

Kick-Down

Kick-down is used in circumstances where rapid acceleration is required, i.e. when overtaking. Kick-down is when the accelerator pedal is quickly and fully depressed, causing the transmission to change down to the lowest gear possible to achieve maximum acceleration. The gear engaged depends on the road speed at the time of kick-down.

Paddle Shift

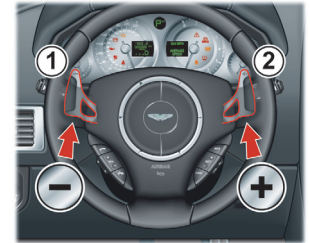
Neutral and forward gears are selected by pulling back and releasing the gearshift paddles mounted on the steering column.

[1] - Downshift Paddle.

[2] - Upshift Paddle.

Reverse is selected by using the Centre Stack mounted Auto Drive Mode buttons.

 *Neutral can also be selected using the Auto Drive Mode buttons.*



When stationary and with the footbrake applied pull back on either the upshift or downshift gearshift paddle to select first gear. As the vehicle speed increases and decreases, make upshifts and downshifts by pulling and releasing the upshift or downshift gearshift paddle.

When shifting up through the gears maintain foot pressure on the accelerator pedal.

 If no pressure is detected on the accelerator pedal once the handbrake and footbrake are released then the transmission will enter the SportShift Crawl feature (Refer to 'SportShift Features', page 5.9).

 If a downshift request is not detected during speed reduction, downshifts will occur as engine speed drops.

 By pulling and releasing the Upshift or Downshift paddle in quick succession up and down shifts can be 'Skipped', i.e. fifth to third or third to fifth (if the up or down shift requests are within the engine and transmission operating limits).

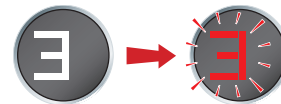


The message centre (left) and the GPID will show the current gear selection.



If the vehicle engine speed reaches its upper operating limit in a particular gear an upshift will not be made until a paddle upshift request has been detected.

To inform the driver that the upper operating limit has been reached the GPID gear symbol will change from white to flashing red.



Hyper-shift

When an upshift is made with the engine speed at or above 5,500 rpm and the accelerator pedal is fully depressed the requested upshift will be accelerated, providing a quicker, sportier driving experience. Not available when the Comfort feature is active.

SportShift Features

 **Warning:** Always secure the vehicle with the brakes when at rest. The brakes must be used to prevent the vehicle rolling on any incline.

 **The SportShift Crawl feature will not maintain vehicle speed or position on an incline (Refer to 'Clutch Warnings', page 5.10).**

 **When moving at slow speeds on any incline always use the accelerator along with the brakes to maintain vehicle speed or position. As with any transmission using a gearbox and clutch arrangement the vehicle will roll once the clutch is disengaged.**

Crawl

The SportShift Crawl feature greatly enhances the vehicle's low speed driveability when on level ground. This is particularly useful when in a slow moving queue of traffic, parking, etc.

When Driving - As vehicle speed falls below 9.5 km/h (6 mph), and no pressure is being applied to the accelerator or the brake pedal the transmission will continue to move the vehicle at a controlled speed of 9.5 km/h (6 mph). This will continue until either the brakes are applied or pressure is detected on the accelerator pedal.

From Standstill - At standstill with first or reverse gear selected and the footbrake or handbrake is applied, the clutch will be disengaged.

If the brakes are released but no pressure is detected on the accelerator pedal, the clutch will progressively engage and the vehicle will move forwards, up to a controlled speed of 9.5 km/h (6 mph), or rearwards, up to a controlled speed of 6.5 km/h (4 mph), depending on which gear is selected. This will continue until either the brakes are applied or pressure is detected on the accelerator pedal.

Moving From Standstill without Crawl - At standstill with first or reverse gear selected keep the brakes applied and open the door. With the door open, release the brakes and gently apply pressure to the accelerator pedal. If no pressure is detected on the accelerator pedal after three seconds then the transmission will select neutral.

 If the driver's door is opened while in Crawl, vehicle movement will continue.

 The Crawl speed will be marginally higher when the engine idle speed is increased, i.e. during a cold start, until the engine idle speed decreases.

Comfort Button



When, and if, a more comfortable driving experience is required use the SportShift Comfort feature.

When active the Comfort button LED will come ON and '**Sport**' will disappear from the message centre (left).

Auto Drive Mode

When Comfort is active gearshift speeds will be reduced and gear upshifts will occur earlier, providing a more comfortable driving experience.

Paddle Shift Mode

When Comfort is active gearshift speeds will be reduced, providing a more comfortable driving experience.

Clutch Warnings

Excessive demands placed on the clutch, i.e. from holding the vehicle on an incline using the throttle only or in Crawl mode, will operate a two stage 'clutch overheat' warning.

Stage One:

The general amber warning symbol  will come ON, and a single audible warning will sound. The message centre (right) will show the message '**Clutch Overheat Brake or Pull Away**'.

The driver should reduce the demand on the clutch by increasing the demand on the accelerator pedal or releasing the accelerator pedal and applying the footbrake or handbrake.

Should clutch overheat be recognized while the transmission is in Crawl, Crawl will be, progressively, disabled. When the clutch temperature has reduced to an acceptable level Crawl is reinstated.

If the demand on the clutch is not reduced and the clutch temperature continues to increase, the second stage of clutch overheat strategy shall be invoked.

Stage Two:

Crawl will be disabled and the message '**Clutch Protect Mode**' and '**Crawl Disabled**' will be shown as a rolling message with the amber triangle until the clutch temperature returns to normal operating limits.

During this time gearshift and moving off performance will be degraded to allow the clutch to cool.

Limp-Home Mode

Certain SportShift system faults will place the vehicle into 'Limp Home' mode.

If the vehicle has gone into Limp-Home mode the message centre (right) will show '**Gearbox Fault Reduced Function**'. While in Limp-Home mode the vehicle can still be driven but only first, second and reverse gears will be available. Comfort mode will be disabled.

Contact your Aston Martin Dealer.



ASTON MARTIN

Manual Transmission

The manual transmission features a six speed gearbox.

Gearshifts

When shifting gear make sure that the clutch pedal is fully depressed.

To avoid excessive clutch wear make sure that you do not drive with your foot resting on the clutch pedal.

Reverse gear is selected by overcoming spring resistance. A red 'R' will show in the Gear Shift Indicator Display (GSID) and a single audible warning will sound when the transmission is in reverse.



To inform the driver that the current gear has reached its upper rev. limit the GSID will show revs increasing (one bar, two bars, three bars then three bars flashing). To avoid hitting the rev. limiter shift gear before or as the GSID reaches three flashing bars.



 For the first 1243 mile (2000 km) and when ever the engine temperature is below 104°F (40°C) the upper rev. limit control will provide early shift changes to protect the engine.

Footbrake

The footbrake operates through a vacuum boosted, dual (diagonal split) circuit, hydraulic system incorporating an Anti-lock Brake System (ABS).

 **Warning:** In the event of a brake failure bring the vehicle to a halt as soon as it is safe to do so. Do not continue to drive.

 If vacuum boost fails or one circuit fails the footbrake will still operate but with greater pedal pressure, increased pedal travel and longer stopping distances.

 After a long drive over salted or gritted roads or if driving in heavy rain, through water or a vehicle wash, the braking action may be delayed and increased braking pressure may be required.

 Vacuum boost is only available while the engine is running.

Brake Warnings

 **Warning: If the brake warning symbol comes ON, you should immediately be prepared for possible increased stopping distances and possible partial failure of the braking system.**

While driving, if the brake warning symbol  comes ON, it shows either that:

- The parking brake is not fully released
- The brake pads require regular maintenance
- The brake fluid level has fallen below an acceptable level

 A warning message will show in the message centre (right).

Stop, as soon as possible in a safe and convenient place. Apply the footbrake and make sure that the parking brake is fully released. If the parking brake is fully released and the symbol stays ON, **do not drive** the vehicle. Contact the nearest Aston Martin Dealer. It is essential that the brake system is checked immediately, preferably by an Aston Martin Dealer.

 *Brake Noise: The high performance brake system used on this vehicle is designed to provide optimal braking under all operating conditions. However, under all driving conditions an inherent characteristic of this braking system is some brake noise, i.e. wire brush noise. Certain combinations of speed, braking forces and ambient conditions may also cause the brakes to squeal.*

Anti-lock Braking System (ABS)

The anti-lock braking system (ABS) helps prevent the road wheels from locking and skidding during emergency braking. This also assists the driver in maintaining steering and directional stability.

If, in an emergency braking situation, the braking force applied begins to exceed the tire to road adhesion, the ABS operates to prevent the road wheels locking. When this happens a pulsating effect is felt through the brake pedal. This is a normal ABS effect.

Safety

In all cases it is always the drivers responsibility to drive safely according to the law and with due regard to prevailing conditions. The fact that a vehicle is equipped with ABS must never allow the driver to be tempted into taking risks which could affect his or her safety or that of other road users.

The addition of ABS cannot overcome the consequences of trying to stop in too short a distance, cornering at too high a speed, or the risk of aquaplaning (where the tires are prevented from contacting the road surface by a layer of water).

The driver should always take road conditions into account. A slippery road surface always requires more braking distance for a given speed, even with ABS. Possible extensions of stopping distance compared to locked wheels may occur during ABS operation on slushy snow, gravel, sand or certain heavily corrugated or ridged warning sections of road surfaces.

If any braking system malfunction occurs, immediately have the Braking and ABS systems checked by your Aston Martin Dealer.

ABS Warning

 **Warning: If the ABS warning symbol comes ON, you should be aware that wheels could lock during extreme braking or when braking on slippery surfaces.**

ABS is monitored for correct operation while the ignition is ON. If a fault is detected, the ABS warning symbol  will come ON and the ABS will be partly or fully disabled.

Normal braking will continue to function without ABS.

In the event of an ABS fault, consult your Aston Martin Dealer immediately.

Parking Brake

 **Always fully apply the parking brake before leaving the vehicle.**

To apply the parking brake:

Press the footbrake pedal firmly down. Keep the pedal pressed down and pull the parking brake lever up until resistance is felt. At this point depress the parking brake button and continue to pull the parking brake lever up to its fullest extent. Release the button and allow the lever to lower.

 To show that the parking brake is applied the parking brake warning symbol on the instrument cluster will come ON (if the ignition is ON).



To release the parking brake:

Press the footbrake pedal firmly down. Keep the pedal pressed down and pull the parking brake lever up until resistance is felt. Pull up against the resistance and depress the release button. Keep the button depressed and push the lever down.

If the parking brake lever is not fully OFF, the parking brake warning symbol will stay ON.



! Always check that the brake warning symbol is OFF before moving off. Do not attempt to drive the vehicle if the brake warning symbol stays ON.

📖 An audible warning will sound if the vehicle is moving and the parking brake is still applied.

- If the vehicle is parked on a hill and facing **uphill**, select first gear and turn the steering wheel away from the curb
- If the vehicle is parked on a hill and facing **downhill**, select reverse gear and turn the steering wheel towards the curb

Dynamic Stability Control (DSC)

⚠ Warning: It is the drivers responsibility to drive safely according to the law and with due regard to prevailing conditions.

⚠ Warning: DSC must never allow the driver to be tempted into taking risks which could affect his or her safety or that of other road users. DSC cannot overcome consequences of applying too much engine power for prevailing conditions.

Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is a system designed to enhance driving safety by improving the vehicle handling when the tires are at the limits of their grip capabilities. This is achieved through the reduction of engine torque and strategic application of the brakes at individual wheels.

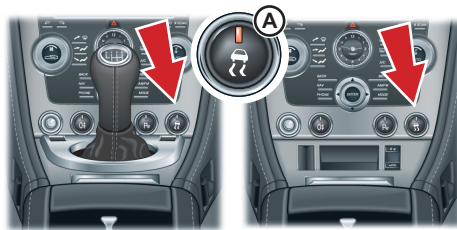
Driver Interface and Control

⚠ ***If repair or replacement of the steering or other surrounding equipment is necessary, always refer to your Aston Martin Dealer. If the centre position of the steering deviates, the DSC may not operate correctly because there is a sensor in the steering system which detects steering wheel position.***

⚠ ***The DSC system may not operate correctly when using tire chains or a temporary spare tire.***

⚠ Use tires of the same manufacturer, brand, tread pattern and correct size specified for this vehicle on all four road wheels. Do not mix worn tires.

The DSC system is set to ON when the engine is started. When the system is operating, the DSC warning symbol will flash. DSC can be set to OFF by pressing the DSC button for a minimum of four seconds. Press and release the DSC button again to set DSC to 'ON'.



📖 *The DSC button LED and the DSC symbol (instrument cluster) will come ON when the system is set to OFF.*



📖 *'DSC FUNCTION OFF' will be shown in the message centre (right) to show that DSC is OFF.*

Fault Signs

A malfunction in the DSC control system will be shown by the following:

- The DSC symbol in the instrument cluster will be ON
- A warning message will show in the message centre (right) depending on the fault detected

If vehicle Cruise Control is engaged it will automatically disengage when traction control is operating (if installed on your vehicle).

Traction Control

 **Warning:** *It is the drivers responsibility to drive safely according to the law and with due regard to prevailing conditions.*

 **Warning:** *Traction Control must never allow the driver to be tempted into taking risks which could affect his or her safety or that of other road users.*

 **Warning:** *Traction Control cannot overcome consequences of applying too much engine power for prevailing conditions.*

 **Do not maintain engine power at such a level that traction control is operated for long periods (more than about one minute). This reduces fuel to the engine and may cause the exhaust catalysts to overheat. Overheating of the exhaust catalysts can destroy them.**

Traction control is a function of DSC, and is operated in association with the DSC system. Traction control prevents excessive wheel spin at standing starts, or during acceleration. Wheel spin is usually caused by excessive use of the accelerator pedal, or slippery, loose or bumpy road surfaces.

To prevent excessive wheel spin and maintain vehicle stability in such situations the traction control system will:

- Brake either of the driven wheels when they start to slip
- Or adapt the engine torque to a level corresponding to the traction available on the road surface

 *These symptoms are normal and will clear as wheel spin is eliminated and normal engine power is restored.*

During operation, the DSC warning symbol will flash. The driver may experience a loss in power or temporary 'misfire' as engine power is reduced.

If traction control cuts in when driving on extended icy or slippery surfaces, reduce engine power as necessary until the DSC warning symbol goes OFF.

Traction control is always operational when DSC is ON.

Positive Torque Control (PTC)

ABS and traction control are complemented by the addition of an engine drag-torque control system - PTC.

On slippery road surfaces, a downshift or sudden throttle closing can cause a braking effect at the driven (rear) wheels due to engine braking. This may cause a loss of traction between the rear road wheels and the road. PTC increases engine torque via the engine management system, to keep the speed of the driven (rear) wheels within the optimum range.

Fuel Filling

Open the fuel flap by pressing the fuel flap release button (A). If the filler flap will not open when the release button is pressed, open the filler flap manually (Refer to 'Filler Flap Emergency Release', page 4.18).

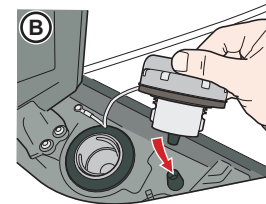
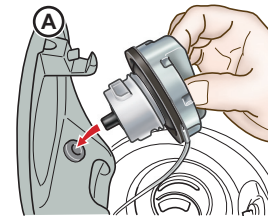
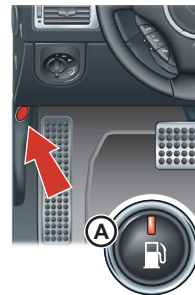
Turn the cap counterclockwise past resistance, then lift off. Place the cap into its holder. Install the cap by turning clockwise past resistance, until three 'clicks' are felt as the cap is fully tightened. Close and latch the fuel flap.



The fuel tank filler neck has a restricted opening which will only accommodate the fuel supply nozzle of unleaded fuel pumps.

[A] - Coupe

[B] - Roadster



The fuel system will not permit overfill but there will be instances when the nozzle will shut OFF prematurely. If this happens wait five seconds after nozzle shut OFF before trying to fill again.

Catalytic Converters

Fuel Cutoff

In the event of a vehicle accident the vehicle will enter Crash mode. Power to the fuel pumps will terminate, thereby reducing fire risk.

 **Warning: Do not park over dry grass, leaves or other combustible material. Significant fire risk exists because of residual heat in the catalytic converters.**

 **Warning: Do not drive through deep water. Rapid cooling of catalysts may cause them to break up.**

Catalytic convertors convert harmful exhaust gasses into less noxious substances and so reduce environmental pollution.

They operate at high temperatures and continue to radiate a considerable amount of heat after the ignition has been set to OFF. Leaded fuel will cause irreparable damage to catalytic converters. If leaded fuel is inadvertently added to the fuel tank **do not start the engine, do not drive the vehicle**. Contact your Aston Martin Dealer immediately.

Rear Parking Assist

(If installed on your vehicle)

 **Warning: Rear Parking Assist does not replace need for total vigilance and caution when parking or reversing.**

 **When parking or reversing make full use of rearward vision and all mirrors to be aware of persons or objects in the vicinity of the vehicle. Take appropriate measures to protect them from danger.**

 **In heavy rain or similar adverse conditions, the rear parking assist sensors may not always be able to accurately measure distance to close objects. A fully laden vehicle or irregular obstacles may also cause inaccurate measurements.**

Rear parking assist assists in detecting obstructions as the vehicle is reversed towards them. The system is ON when reverse gear is selected. When the system is operating an intermittent 'beep' signal will be heard. The 'beep' frequency increases in pitch and persistence as the vehicle reverses to an obstruction.

 The 'beeps' start at approximately 5.5 ft (1.7 m) from any obstruction. The 'beep' becomes continuous at distances less than 1 ft (30 cm).

 If reversing into a confined area, i.e. a home garage, the rear parking assist **outer** sensors will detect the side walls 1 ft (30 cm) and, after 3 seconds, the 'Beep' sequence will stop. As reversing continues the rear parking assist **inner** sensors will detect the rear wall or obstruction and the 'Beep' sequence will start again.

Press the parking assist button to disable parking assist. The button LED will come ON to show that the system is **disabled**.



The parking sensors¹ should be kept clear of dirt, snow etc. to make sure of clean signals and accurate distance monitoring.



¹. Coupe Shown. The sensors are located in the same positions on the Roadster.

Front and Rear Parking Assist

(If installed on your vehicle)

⚠ ***It is always the driver's responsibility to detect obstacles and estimate the vehicle's distance from them. Some overhanging objects, barriers, thin obstructions or painted surfaces which could possibly cause damage to the vehicle may not be detected by the system. Always be vigilant when reversing.***

⚠ ***If, for example, you are driving within a confined space such as a home garage, the outer sensors will detect the side walls and after three seconds will set the tone to OFF. However, as movement continues, the inner sensors will eventually detect the rear wall and will start the tone again.***

⚠ ***The rear sensors are not ON when Neutral is selected, therefore care should be taken if moving the vehicle as the tone will not sound.***

⚠ ***Do not clean the sensors with abrasive or sharp objects.***

📖 For reliable operation, the sensors in the front and rear bumpers should be kept free from ice, frost and grime.

📖 When using a high pressure spray the sensors should only be sprayed briefly and not from a distance of less than 8 in (200 mm). Do not clean the sensors with abrasive materials.

The parking assist system provides an audible warning, when driving forwards or rearwards, if objects are detected within range of the vehicle.



Operation

⚠ In heavy rain or similar adverse conditions, the rear parking assist sensors may not always be able to accurately measure distance to close objects. A fully laden vehicle or irregular obstacles may also cause inaccurate measurements.

The Parking Assist system defaults to OFF when the ignition is set to ON. The system comes ON when reverse gear is selected, or if the Parking Assist button is pressed at speeds below 9 mph (15 km/h). The system will set to OFF when the vehicle moves forwards above 9 mph (15 km/h). The Parking Assist button LED will come ON when the system is set to ON. The LED will flash if a fault is detected in the system.

If an obstacle is detected at the front or rear of the vehicle, a series of beeps will be heard from the front or rear speaker respectively, which increases in rate as the vehicle nears the obstacle.



The beep becomes a continuous tone when an obstacle is detected at or within approximately 12 in (300 mm) from the rear or 10 in (250 mm) from the front of the vehicle.

 *Parking assist may sound spurious tones if it detects an ultrasonic frequency using the same band as the sensors.*

 *If the system has a fault, when engaging reverse gear or turning the ignition ON, then a single three second tone will be heard (only once per ignition cycle) and the parking assist button LED will blink. The system is automatically disabled when a fault is detected.*



The system consists of inner and outer sensors. When manoeuvring forward into a Garage, etc., the front outer sensors will cease detection if they detect a stationary or receding object for three seconds or more, this allows detection directly at the front of the vehicle in this type of manoeuvre.

Driving Techniques

Procedures for driving this vehicle may be unfamiliar to many new owners. Please take time to safely acquire the necessary new driving skills. Practise in safe, lower speed conditions before investigating the high performance potential of the vehicle. Please make sure that you have a safe and enjoyable entry into this new phase of Aston Martin motoring.

Performance Driving Courses are available to enable customers not only to understand the control functions of their vehicle but also the basic principles of Performance Driving.

Contact your Aston Martin Dealer for further information.

Wet Conditions

When driving in wet conditions, water can build up under your tires so that they ride on a layer of water. This is called aquaplaning or hydroplaning. When this happens, you have little or no control.

Aquaplaning is more prone to happening at higher road speeds if there is a lot of water on the road and particularly if the tires are also under inflated or approaching minimum tread depth.

It is important to take bends or curves at a safe, reasonable speed, particularly when driving on wet or slippery road surfaces.

Slow down when it is raining.

Track Days

Before using this vehicle on Track Days contact your Aston Martin Dealer for vehicle set up, service parts and recommendations.

Driving Through Deep Water

⚠ *If in any doubt whether to drive through deep water, always take the side of caution to avoid potentially costly damage to the vehicle's engine or other essential systems.*

If driving on flooded roads, through deep or standing water is unavoidable, proceed with extreme caution, especially when the depth is not known. Never drive in water deeper than the lower edge of the front bumper.

Water can be splashed up into the engine air intakes located in the front upper grille and cause extensive damage to the engine or the vehicle may stall.

 *Waves caused by other vehicles or natural causes can also splash water in the engine air intakes.*

Running-In

This vehicle is fully hot tested during manufacture and no special running-in procedures are necessary. Nevertheless it is prudent to limit engine loads (e.g. by accelerating gently and by using lower gears on steep hills or when negotiating tight turns) during the first 1000 mile (1500 km).



ASTON MARTIN



Convertible Roof

Contents

Roof Operation	6.2
Door Windows Reset	6.5
Roof Reset.....	6.5
Manual Raise and Lock	6.6
Roof Maintenance.....	6.10
Deployable Rollbars	6.10
Wind Deflector	6.11

Roof Operation

 **Warning:** *Misuse of the Roof switch, especially by children, can result in injury due to entrapment in the Roof mechanism and locking points.*

 **Warning:** *Before raising or lowering the Roof, make sure that all occupants are clear of the Roof linkage, the frame and door windows.*

 **Aston Martin recommend that the Roof is not operated at temperatures of 32°F (0°C) and below.**

 **Make sure that the Roof is always fully raised or fully lowered.**

 **Do not attempt to lower the Roof if any objects or clothing are laying on top of the Roof.**

 **Continuous use of the Roof without the engine running will cause the vehicle battery to rapidly discharge.**

 **Do not store objects or items in the Roof storage area. Any objects or items stored there may cause damage to the Roof when attempting to lower it. Even small objects can cause damage.**

 **Avoid repetitive use of the Roof; this may cause the roof pump to over heat. If the pump over heats roof movement will be inhibited until the pump has cooled.**

Conditions for Operating the Roof

 **Warning:** *Keep the vehicle road speed down to a minimum until the Roof has completed its operation.*

 **Aston Martin recommend that the Roof is only operated while the vehicle is stationary.**

- The trunk lid must be closed
- The ignition must be ON (engine running or not)
- Headroom (A (73.5 in (1865 mm)) is available for the Roof to raise or lower

 *The trunk lid will lock and will stay locked during Roof lowering and raising operations.*



If the vehicle is moving while the Roof is being raised or lowered, Roof movement will continue, **while the Roof switch is pressed**, until the Roof has locked in the raised or lowered position.

While operating the Roof the following warnings will show, depending on the vehicle speed:

2.5-3 mph (4-5 km/h) - 'Stop Safely for Roof Operation' will show in the message centre (right).

30-40 mph (50-65 km/h) - 'Stop Safely for Roof Operation' will show in the message centre (right), the amber warning triangle will show and a single audible warning will sound. Roof movement will continue.

Over 40 mph (65 km/h) - 'Roof Failure Possible' will show in the message centre (right), the amber warning triangle will show and a continuous audible warning will sound. Roof movement will continue.

It is not possible to start Roof operation at speeds of 30 mph (50 km/h) or above. 'No Roof Operation Possible' will show in the message centre (right), the amber warning triangle will show and a single audible warning will sound.

 While operating the Roof, if the Roof switch is released when travelling at 30 mph (50 km/h) or more, no Roof movement will be available until the vehicle speed drops below 30 mph (50 km/h).

Lowering the Roof

⚠ Warning: Roof movement has not finished and locked until 'Roof Movement Complete' shows in the message centre (right).

The Roof operation switch (A) is located on the centre console.

If at any time during the lowering or raising procedure the switch is released – the Roof will stop immediately.

'Roof Movement Paused' will show in the message centre (right) and an audible warning will sound until the Roof continues to raise or lower.

⚠ As soon as it is safe to do so continue the Roof movement. If the Roof is left in 'Pause' for ten minutes, hydraulic pressure will be lost. The Roof and Tonneau lid will relax and, gently, fall back. Powered Roof operation will be stopped until the Roof has been manually fully raised or lowered (Refer to 'Roof Reset', page 6.5).



Pull the Roof switch rearwards and hold until 'Roof Movement Complete' shows in the message centre (right).



Raising the Roof

⚠ Warning: Roof movement has not finished and locked until 'Roof Movement Complete' shows in the message centre (right).

Push the Roof switch forwards and hold until 'Roof Movement Complete' shows in the message centre (right) and a single audible warning sounds.



If the door windows are required to be closed continue to press the switch after 'Roof Movement Complete' shows until the door windows have closed.



Door Windows Reset

In the unlikely event of the Roof failing while in the fully raised or lowered position, check for correct operation of the vehicle door windows.

To check the door windows operation use the door window reset procedure (Refer to 'Door Window Reset', page 11.44). Once correct operation of the windows is confirmed, check Roof operation again. If the Roof will not work then manually raise and lock the roof (if required) and contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

Roof Reset

If the Roof stalls or is left in 'Pause' for ten minutes or more, hydraulic pressure will be lost. The Roof and Tonneau lid will relax and, gently, fall back. Powered Roof operation will be stopped until the Roof has been reset by manually fully raising or lowering the Roof.

It is recommended to fully lower the Roof to reset.

 **Warning: Aston Martin recommend that a minimum of two people are required to manually lower the Roof. The Roof mechanism is heavy and will move very slowly when being moved manually.**

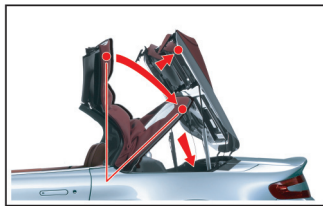
 **Warning: Keep fingers clear of the Roof linkage when moving the Roof manually.**

1. Remove the vehicle key from the Ignition control.
2. With a person each side, support the tonneau lid (A) in the raised position. While supporting the lid raise the Tension Bow (B) towards the Header of the Roof (C). When the Tension Bow has reached its mechanical stop bring the Header of the Roof down towards the Tension bow.

! *Make sure that the Tension Bow and Header lower together. It is possible to damage the Roof if the Tension Bow is allowed to lower without the Header.*



- Continue to support the Tonneau lid and lower the Tension Bow and the Header together into the Roof storage area. Once the Tension Bow and the Header are stored let the Tonneau lid lower.

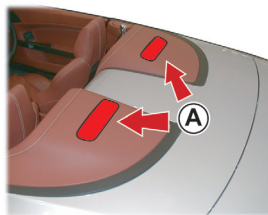


- In the areas shown, push the tonneau lid down and engage both tonneau lid catches, one each side.

Once the catches have engaged the Roof will reset and 'Roof Movement Complete' will show in the message centre (right). Operate the Roof using the Roof switch.

If the Roof does not work contact your Aston Martin Dealer. If the vehicle is to be left unattended or in case of inclement weather, it is recommended that the Roof be raised and locked.

 Raising and locking the Roof may reset the Roof. If 'Roof Movement Complete' shows in the message centre (right) use the Roof switch to operate the Roof.



Manual Raise and Lock

In the unlikely event of the Roof failing during raising or lowering, it can be manually raised and locked, if required.

! *Warning: Aston Martin recommend that a minimum of two people are required to manually raise and lock the Roof. The Roof mechanism is heavy and will move very slowly when being raised manually.*

! *Warning: Keep fingers clear of the Roof linkage when moving the Roof manually.*

! *Vehicle Security: If the Roof fails always raise and lock the Roof. Do not lower the Roof. Tonneau lid locks will not be available.*

 If the Roof fails in the stored position it can stay stored and locked if required. Contact your Aston Martin dealer.

 If the Roof fails after the tonneau locks have been released the message 'Roof Fail' will show in the message centre (right) and a continuous audible warning will sound until the Roof has been locked in the raised position.

If installed, remove and store the wind deflector (Refer to 'Wind Deflector', page 6.11).

Remove the allen key from the vehicle tool kit (A) and place in the vehicle cabin.

 The Allen key is required to lock the roof in position.



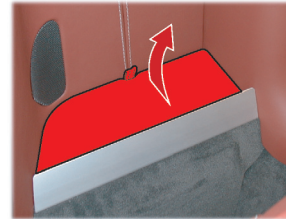
Remove the vehicle key and wait for a minimum of five seconds.

 During this time the Roof hydraulics will relax allowing manual movement of the Roof. Some hydraulic fluid resistance will still be in the operating rams. It may take considerable effort to fully raise the Roof manually.

If the tonneau lid is locked or unlocked but still on its secondary catches.

 If required power the drivers seat forward.

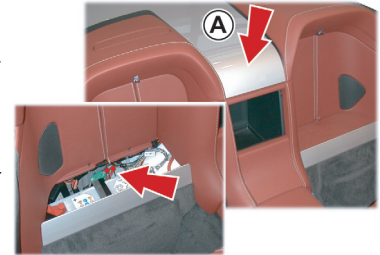
Remove the vehicle battery cover. Remove the foam insert and locate the two tonneau lid manual release cables.



Pull the tonneau lid manual release cables, releasing the tonneau lid.

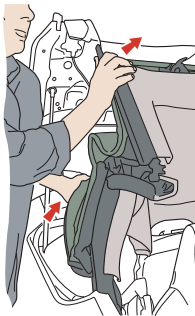
 While pulling the manual release cables, apply slight downward pressure in the middle of the tonneau lid at point B.

With a person each side, manually lift the tonneau lid to its fullest extent.



With a person each side, support the tonneau lid in the fully raised position, while raising the Roof.

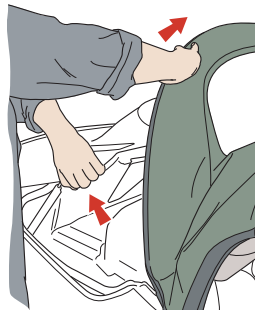
Place one hand under the roof lining and the other hand under the roof tension bow (positions shown) - lift, both sides, until the tension bow clears the tonneau lid.



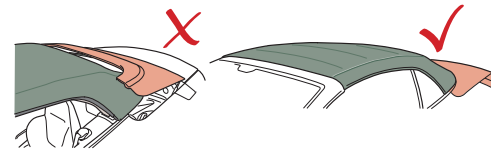
When the rear tension bow has cleared the tonneau lid, let the tonneau lid lower.

 *Hold the Roof in position while the tonneau lid lowers.*

 *It will not be possible to lock the tonneau lid in its lowered position. The raised roof with the tension bow laying on the tonneau lid will be sufficient to secure the tonneau lid when driving.*

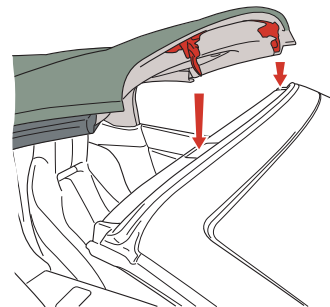


 ***Do not allow the tonneau lid to rest on the Roof fabric.***



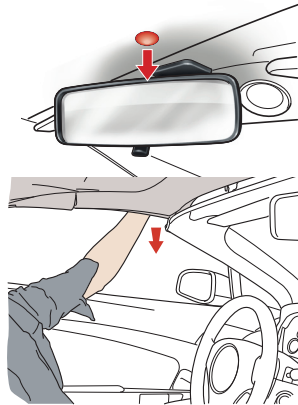
Lower the tension bow onto the tonneau lid.

At the same time the front of the Roof will lower to the top of the windscreen.

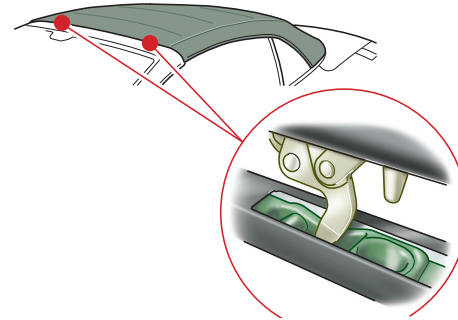


From inside the vehicle cabin, remove the trim plug.

With a person in each seat reach out and pull the roof down (position shown) to make sure that the two lock arms are located in their catches.



⚠ Warning: Make sure that fingers and hands are not between the Roof and the top of the windscreen while locking the Roof in position.

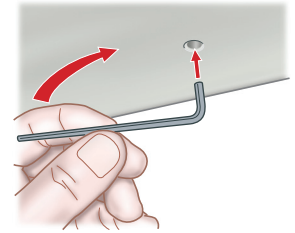


While the roof is being held down with the two lock arms located in their catches, use the allen key, from the vehicle tool kit, to lock the Roof in position.

 Many turns of the allen key will be required to lock the Roof.

Continue to turn the allen key until no more movement is possible.

⚠ Do not use power tools. The Roof manual lock and unlock mechanism may be damaged if power tools, i.e. an electric drill, are used to lock or unlock the Roof.



Roof Maintenance

 **Do not use automatic vehicle washes. Brushes, detergents and pressurised water jets may damage the Roof fabric.**

 **Do not use power washers. Jets of water may damage the weather seals and the Roof fabric.**

 **Do not use spot cleaners, chemical diluents or any organic cleaners. If in doubt, contact your Aston Martin Dealer.**

If the Roof is left for prolonged periods in the lowered position (folded), in certain circumstances (a wet or dirty Roof) permanent soiling along folds may occur in the Roof fabric.

Do not leave the Roof in the lowered (folded) position for longer than necessary.

Roof Fabric Maintenance

(Refer to 'Convertible Roof Fabric', page 11.47)

Deployable Rollbars

 **Warning: Do not attempt to service or modify the deployable rollbar system.**

 **Warning: Do not allow any person to sit on the deployable rollbar covers at any time.**

 **Warning: Do not place any objects on the top of the deployable rollbar covers.**

 **Warning: Do not attempt to reset the deployable rollbar system after it has deployed.**

 **Warning: Do not attempt to raise or lower the Roof after the deployable rollbar system has deployed.**

 **If the Roof is not stowed the deployable rollbars will break through the rear glass.**

 **Extreme manoeuvres may cause the system to predict a roll over and deploy the rollbars for protection of the occupants. If such driving events are anticipated by the customer (e.g. Track day driving) the Roof should be retracted to allow the rollbars to deploy without damaging the vehicle.**

 The deployable rollbar system and the airbag system react independently. The deployable rollbars and the airbags may deploy together or alone, depending on the type of impact.

This vehicle is equipped with a deployable rollbar system, which is in addition to and independent of the airbag system.

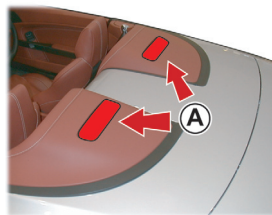
The deployable rollbar system comprises an electronic roll sensor unit mounted to the body and two 'U' shaped roll bars, concealed by trim panels in the tonneau lid (A), which will deploy in the unlikely event of the vehicle rolling over.

The electronic roll sensor constantly monitors the vehicle attitude.

On sensing an impending roll over situation the electronic roll sensor sends a signal to the deployable rollbars, triggering a release.

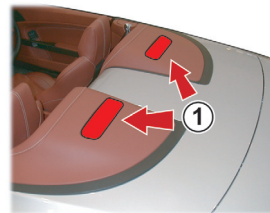
The deployable rollbars then extend upward and lock into place.

If the deployable rollbar system has been deployed, contact your nearest Aston Martin Dealer.



Warning Labels

The following warning is located on the deployable rollbar system, [1] - 'Do Not Cover'



Wind Deflector

(if installed on your vehicle)

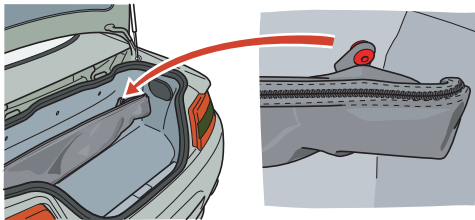
A wind deflector can be installed to enhance comfort when driving with the Roof lowered.

- Wind turbulence is greatly reduced
- It easily installs to existing mounts within your vehicle
- The wind deflector can be left in place with the Roof raised or lowered
- Easily folded and stowed away when not used

⚠ Take care when adjusting the driver or passenger seat position with the wind deflector installed. Make sure that the seats do not come into contact the wind deflector.

Storage

The wind deflector is stored, in its own bag, in the vehicle boot. The bag is secured to the back wall of the boot at four location points.

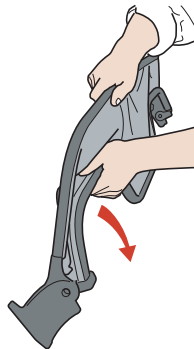
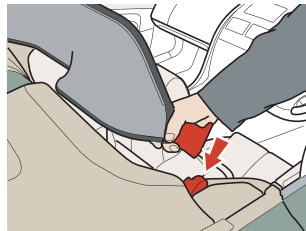


 The bag installs as shown with the four tabs towards the boot wall.

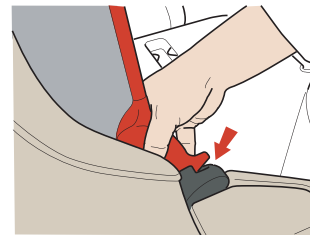
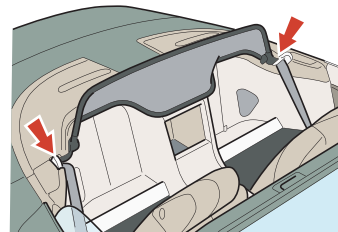


Installation

1. Remove the wind deflector from its storage bag, located in the boot.
2. Unfold the wind deflector.
3. Locate the two tabs on the wind deflector in to the slots provided in the top seat belt mounts.

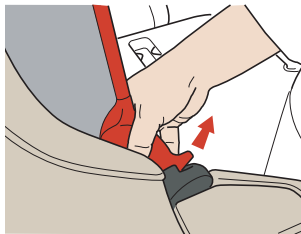


4. Push down at the points shown. Make sure that the mounts fully clip into place and are secure.



Removal

1. Pull up at the points shown to un-clip the two tabs from the top seat belt mounts.
2. Remove the wind deflector from the vehicle, fold it flat, and place it in its storage bag. Place the bag in its storage area the vehicle boot.



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



Climate Control

Contents

Operating Tips	7.2
Control Switches	7.2
Airflow Modes.....	7.4
Automatic Operation	7.5
Manual Operation.....	7.6
Solar and Temperature Sensors	7.7
Display Units.....	7.7

Operating Tips

- A solar sensor is installed on top of the instrument panel, this should not be covered when driving
- The intake grille of the in-vehicle temperature sensor is located in the driver's knee bolster, close to the centre console. To maintain the optimum temperature control this grille should not be obstructed
- Moisture which forms on the evaporator in the air conditioning unit is discharged via a drain tube onto the road. After stopping, small puddles of water may form underneath the vehicle. This is normal and does not show a system malfunction
- Operate the climate control system with the engine running
- Clear all obstructions like leaves, snow and ice from the hood and the air inlet in the front grille to improve the system efficiency
- Windows may fog up easily in humid weather. Use the climate control system to demist the windows

- To help demist the windows, operate the air conditioner to dehumidify the air
- Use the 'outside air' position in normal conditions. The 'recirculated air' position should be used temporarily when driving on dusty roads or for quick cooling or heating of the interior
- If the vehicle has been parked in direct sunlight during hot weather, open the windows to let warm air escape, then close the windows and run the climate control system
- Run the climate control system at least once a month to keep internal parts lubricated
- Have the climate control system checked before the weather gets hot. If the climate control system is low on refrigerant or has a malfunction, consult your Aston Martin Dealer
- The vehicle is equipped with a pollen filter. It is necessary to change the filter periodically as shown in the scheduled maintenance. Consult your Aston Martin Dealer

Control Switches



[1] DISPLAY- Shows options, menus and information.

[2] MAX  - Press for maximum defrost or demist ON or OFF. Outside air intake is automatically selected and air conditioning is automatically started.

[3] TEMPERATURE- Set the required in vehicle temperature. Turn clockwise for hot and counterclockwise for cold. The selected temperature is shown on the **DISPLAY**.

[4] AUTO- Press for automatic climate control operation (Refer to 'Automatic Operation', page 7.5).

[5] A/C- When in Manual mode press and release to set the air conditioning ON or OFF.

[6] HEATED REAR WINDOW- Press to operate the rear window heater. Goes OFF after 20 minutes if not manually set to OFF. When the heated rear window is ON the door mirror heaters will work for 6.5 minutes, then go OFF.

 **Warning: Do not select re circulated air in cold or rainy weather, it may cause the interior glass to mist up.**

[7] AIR CIRCULATION- Controls the source of air entering the vehicle. Press to select re circulated air (button LED ON). Press again to select outside air as source.

Use the re circulated air position when going through tunnels, driving in congested traffic (high engine exhaust areas) or when maximum cooling is required.

On start up the default position is outside air as source. Use this position for normal conditions and demisting.

[8] FAN SPEED- Turn to set the required fan speed (clockwise for fast speed and counterclockwise for low speed). The fan speed is shown on the **DISPLAY**.

[9] AIRFLOW- Select the required airflow. The selected air flow mode is shown on the **DISPLAY** (Refer to 'Airflow Modes', page 7.4).

 Air conditioning may not function when the outside temperature approaches 32°F (0°C) (symbol stays ON even when system is OFF).

Airflow Modes

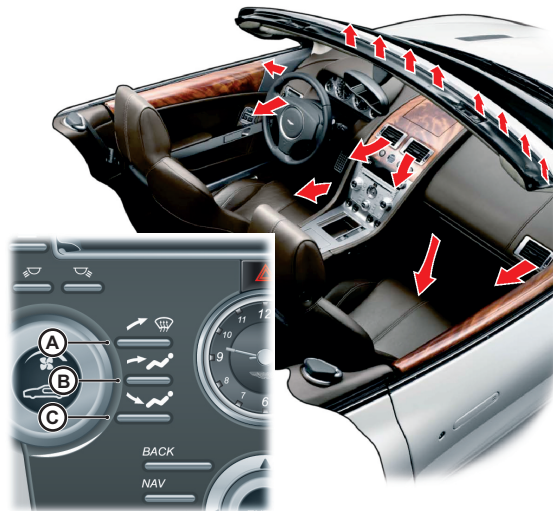
Press and release each button for an airflow mode. By pressing one or more buttons at a time, seven airflow modes are available.

Mode	Button(s)
Windscreen and Door Windows _a	A
Face Only	B
Feet Only _b	C
Windscreen, Door Windows and Face	A+B
Windscreen, Door Windows and Feet _c	A+C
Face and Feet	B+C
Windscreen, Door Windows, Face and Feet	A+B+C

a. In addition a small bleed of air is directed into the face vents.

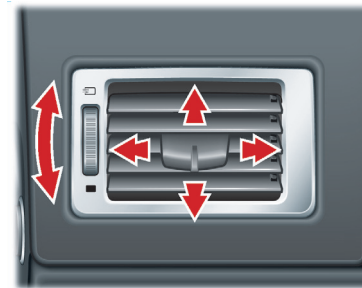
b. In addition a small bleed of air is directed to the face vents, the windscreen and door windows.

c. In addition a small bleed of air is directed into the face vents.



Adjusting the Vents

To adjust the air flow vents:



Automatic Operation

Press **AUTO**. Using the **TEMPERATURE** dial set the required in-vehicle temperature (read the actual temperature setting in the top left of the **DISPLAY**). The **A/C** button LED will come ON.

Adjustments to fan speed, air flow and air recirculation will be made automatically according to the set temperature, interior and exterior conditions.



When using the air conditioner, mist may come out from the vents. This is not a sign of trouble but a result of humid air being suddenly cooled.



If resetting climate control functions other than the fan speed, the fan speed will stay set as in automatic mode. Adjustments to the fan speed will cancel Auto Mode.

Defrost and Demist



To defrost or demist the windshield on vehicle start up in extreme cold weather conditions, run the engine at 1500 rpm. Always make sure that Neutral (manual) or Park (automatic) is selected and the parking brake is applied.



Press **MAX** . The outside air intake is automatically selected, the temperature is set to maximum and A/C is started.



If the engine is cold the A/C will not start up until the engine has started to warm up.

To cancel Automatic defrost or demist either:

- Press **MAX**  again

or

- Press **AUTO**

or

- Press any of the airflow mode buttons

Manual Operation

Heating and Cooling

Set the required:

- Fan speed
- Temperature
- Air flow

If dehumidifying is required, press the **A/C** button (button LED ON).
To cease dehumidifying press **A/C** button (button LED OFF).

 When using the air conditioner, mist may come out from the vents. This is not a sign of trouble but a result of humid air being suddenly cooled.

 Setting the temperature to maximum high or low will not provide the required temperature at a faster rate. To prevent cool air blowing from the vents when heating immediately after starting a cold engine, the amount of airflow is reduced until the air warms up.

 The vehicle heater will continue to produce the selected temperature regardless of in-vehicle conditions.

 When maximum cooling is required, set the **TEMPERATURE** dial to the extreme cold position and press the **AIR CIRCULATION** button to the re circulated air position ( will show in the **DISPLAY**), then set a fast fan speed.

Defrost and Demist

 **To defrost or demist the windshield on vehicle start up in extreme cold weather conditions, run the engine at 1500 rpm. Always make sure that Neutral (manual) or Park (automatic) is selected and the parking brake is applied.**

Press **A/C**. Press the   airflow button.

Set the required:

- Temperature
- Fan speed.

 If the engine is cold the A/C will not start up until the engine has started to warm up.

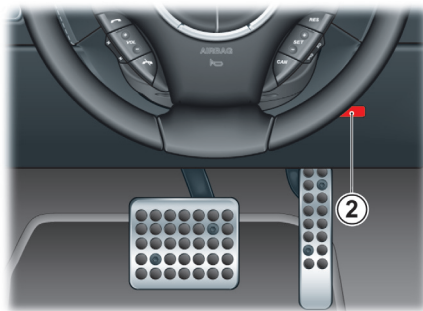
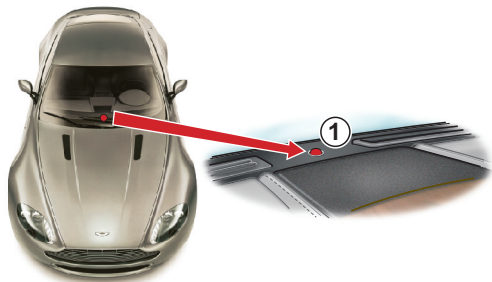
 For maximum defrost or demist set the temperature and fan speed dials to maximum.

Solar and Temperature Sensors

The automatic air conditioner function measures inside and outside temperatures, and sunlight. It then sets the interior temperature accordingly. To maintain effective operation do not obscure the following sensors.

[1] - Solar sensor.

[2] - In-vehicle temperature sensor.



Display Units

To change the **DISPLAY** units from °C to °F or °F to °C.

Press and hold in buttons 1 and 6 (A). Insert the vehicle key in the Ignition Control and move to position 'II' (ignition ON), then release the two buttons.





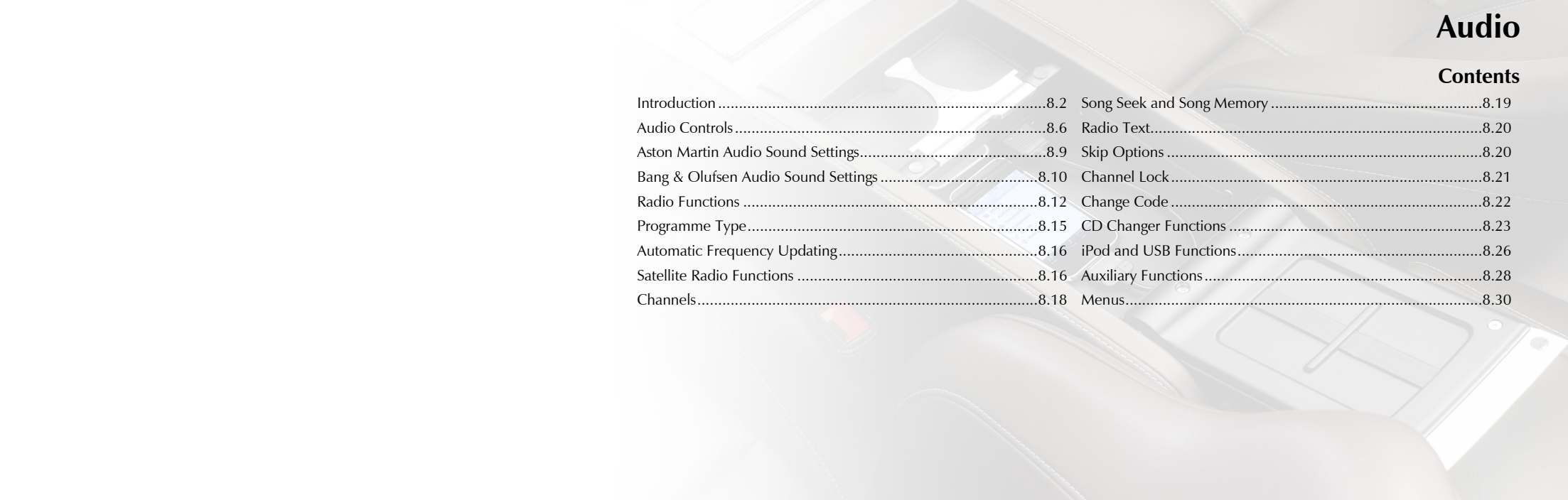
ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



Audio

Contents

Introduction	8.2	Song Seek and Song Memory	8.19
Audio Controls	8.6	Radio Text.....	8.20
Aston Martin Audio Sound Settings.....	8.9	Skip Options	8.20
Bang & Olufsen Audio Sound Settings	8.10	Channel Lock	8.21
Radio Functions	8.12	Change Code	8.22
Programme Type.....	8.15	CD Changer Functions	8.23
Automatic Frequency Updating.....	8.16	iPod and USB Functions.....	8.26
Satellite Radio Functions	8.16	Auxiliary Functions	8.28
Channels.....	8.18	Menus.....	8.30

Introduction

The Audio system is an integrated part of the Infotainment system along with the vehicle Hands-Free phone and Satellite Navigation functions. The infotainment system can be used easily and conveniently using the common control panel.

Standard System

Radio - AM₁ / FM radio. 10 AM and 20 FM presets are available.

CD - Six CD autochanger.

iPod - Connection Port.

USB Device - Connection Port.

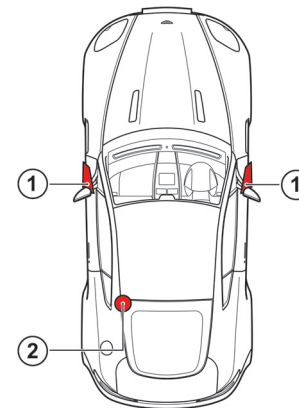
Auxiliary Device - Connection Port.

Power Output - 260W.

Speakers

[1] - Two door-mounted 40W speakers, each with mid-range and tweeter units,

[2] - One 80W subwoofer housed under the rear environment left side.



₁. Medium Wave (MW) and Long Wave (LW)

Aston Martin Audio System

(if installed on your vehicle)

Radio - AM and FM radio. 10 AM and 20 FM presets.

Satellite Radio - (If installed on your vehicle)

CD - Six CD autochanger.

Power Output - 700W.

Dolby Pro-Logic II

iPod®¹ - Connection port.

USB Device - Connection port.

Auxiliary Input - Connection port.

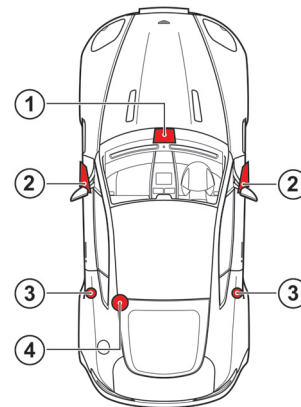
Speakers

[1] - 100W centre-fill speaker.

[2] - Two door-mounted 100W speakers, each with mid-range and tweeter units.

[3] - Two rear environment 100W speakers, each with mid-range and tweeter units.

[4] - 200W subwoofer housed under the rear environment left seat.



¹. iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc.

Bang & Olufsen Audio System

(if installed on your vehicle)

Radio - AM and FM radio. 10 AM and 20 FM presets are available.

Satellite Radio - (If installed on your vehicle)

CD - Six CD autochanger.

iPod₁ - Connection port.

USB Device - Connection port.

Auxiliary Input - Connection port.

Power Output - 974W.

Speakers

[1] - Two ¾ in (19 mm) (soft dome) tweeters incorporating Acoustic Lens Technology (ALT).

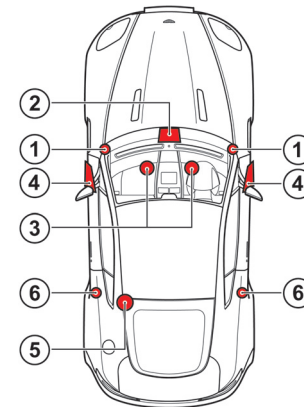
[2] - Centre: Two speakers: One 3½ in (90 mm) mid-range in closed cabinet and one ¾ in (19 mm) (soft dome) tweeter.

[3] - Footwell: Two 5½ in (140 mm) woofers in closed cabinets.

[4] - Two 3½ in (90 mm) mid-range speakers in closed cabinets.

[5] - One 8 in (200 mm) subwoofer housed in closed cabinet under the rear environment left seat.

[6] - Rear environment: Four speakers: One 3½ in (90 mm) mid-range and one ¾ in (19 mm) (soft dome) tweeter in each rear quarter.

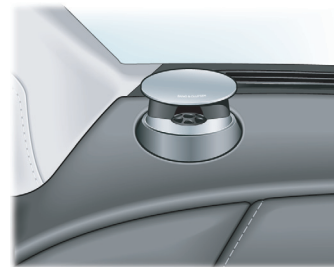


¹. iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc.

Acoustic Lens Technology

Acoustic Lens Technology (ALT) gives a wide (180°) horizontal dispersion of high frequencies. This prevents the loss of critical sound and gives listeners an improved sense of space, staging and realism, even when not sitting in the optimal location¹ for listening to two-channel stereo reproductions.

Two motorized acoustic lenses, mounted on either side of the dashboard, rise when the system is set to ON and stay raised until the Audio system is set to OFF.



ASTON MARTIN

¹. For the optimal location to listen to two-channel stereo reproductions, the listener should be sitting equidistant from both loudspeakers on the apex of an equilateral triangle.

Audio Controls

[1] ON/OFF- Press for Audio ON and OFF.

[2] VOLUME- Volume control.

[3] keypad- Use the numbers as menu short-cuts. Press the number corresponding to the menu number.

[4] DISPLAY- Shows options, menus and information.

[5] SOUND- Press and hold to enter sound setting mode. Press repeatedly to move through settings, turn to select. When in iPod or USB mode a press and release will enable file viewing.

[6] TUNING- Turn to navigate through menu options.

[7] MENU- Opens the main menu.

[8] AM/FM- Press to select radio as audio source.

[9] MODE- Press repeatedly to select audio source.

[10] ENTER- Select in the menu or open a selection.

[11] JOYSTICK- Press up or down to navigate in the menus. Press left or right to set levels when adjusting the Equalizer.

[12] BACK- Press to move back one action. Press and hold to move back to the default screen.

Steering Wheel Controls

[13] VOLUME- Volume control.



Operation

The Audio system is available with the vehicle key at least in position 'I' and is available until the vehicle key is removed from the Ignition Control.

If the Audio system is ON when the ignition is set to OFF and the vehicle key removed, it will automatically start the next time the vehicle key is moved to position 'I'.

Press **ON/OFF** to set the Audio system ON or OFF.



When the Audio system is set to ON the volume will be at the same level it was when the Audio system was set to OFF.

The **JOYSTICK**, **ENTER** and **BACK** will not operate if Satellite Navigation is selected (**NAV** button LED ON) either press:

- The **NAV** button to deselect Satellite Navigation (**NAV** button LED OFF)

- Or press any Audio button other than **BACK**, **ENTER** and **JOYSTICK**

to access controls for Audio.



*Pressing the **AM/FM** or **MODE** buttons will move the current audio source.*

Sound Source

To select radio, at any time while the Audio system is ON, press the **AM/FM** button repeatedly to navigate between the radio bands.

To select other audio sound sources (CD, iPod, USB, AUX, SAT 1 or SAT 2) press the **MODE** button repeatedly to navigate through the sound source choices.

Battery Protection Mode

Using the Audio system, with the vehicle key at position 'I' (ignition OFF) will drain the battery charge. A warning message will show in the message centre (right) when the battery charge is low (Refer to 'Battery Protection Mode', page 11.31).

Menus

The Audio menu is only available when the Audio system is ON. Press **MENU** to access the main menu. The menu for the current audio source (i.e. radio, CD, iPod, etc.) will be available.

Search Path

Menu paths are shown for each operation in the following format:

<FM Menu...> (Enter) <Advanced radio settings...> (Enter)



In this chapter when asked to 'Press' a button, this means 'Press and release'. When this is not the case it will be clear in the text.

Several menu options will require a cross in a box **X** to select an option. Once the menu item is highlighted press **ENTER** to either place a cross in the box or delete the cross. Then press and hold **BACK** to accept and return to the main screen.

Active Sound Control

This vehicle has a speed-dependent volume feature known as Active Sound Control (ASC). This adjusts the volume automatically depending on the speed of the vehicle.

Press **MENU** and navigate to sound source menu <AM, FM, CD, iPod, USB, AUX, SAT 1 or SAT 2 menu...> (Enter) <Audio settings...> (Enter) <Auto. volume control>. Select <Low>, <Medium> or <High> (Enter).

Original Settings

Radio Functions

Resets all radio settings to the original factory settings.

Press **MENU** and navigate to <FM Menu...> (Enter) <Advanced radio settings...> (Enter) <Reset all...> (Enter). Press **ENTER** again to confirm.

Sound Settings

Resets all sound settings to the original factory settings:

Press **MENU** and navigate to sound source menu <AM, FM, CD, iPod, USB, AUX, SAT 1 or SAT 2 menu...> (Enter) <Audio settings...> (Enter) <Reset all...> (Enter). Press **ENTER** again to confirm.

Aston Martin Audio Sound Settings

To access sound settings:

- Press and hold **SOUND** to enter sound setting mode. Then press repeatedly until the required sound setting is shown on the **DISPLAY**.

or

- Press **MENU** and navigate to the sound source menu <AM, FM, CD, iPod, USB, AUX, SAT 1 or SAT 2 menu...> (Enter) <Audio Settings...> (Enter) <Sound settings...> (Enter).

Turn the **TUNING** dial to the desired setting.

 The level for the centre speaker can only be set if either Dolby Pro-Logic II or 3 Channel has been selected from the sound source menu.

Bass - Level for Bass

Treble - Level for Treble

Fader - Balance between the front and rear speakers

Balance - Balance between the left and right speakers

Surround - Level for surround sound

Subwoofer - Level for subwoofer

Centre - Level for centre speaker

Surround - Level for surround sound

Setting the Surround Sound

Press **MENU** and navigate to the sound source menu <AM, FM, CD, iPod, USB, AUX, SAT 1 or SAT 2 menu...> (Enter) <Audio Settings...> (Enter) <Surround (AM, FM, CD, iPod, AUX, SAT 1 or SAT 2)...> (Enter). Select <Dolby Pro-Logic II>, <3 Channel> or <Off> (Enter).

Press and hold **BACK** to return to the main display.

The symbol for Dolby Pro-Logic II is shown on the **DISPLAY** if <Dolby Pro-Logic II> is selected. '3CH' is shown on the **DISPLAY** if <3 Channel> is selected.

<Off> means the system is in normal stereo mode.

 Dolby Pro-Logic II is not available in Radio mode.

Equalizer

Fine adjustment of the sound from the speakers:

Press **MENU** and navigate to the sound source menu <AM, FM, CD, iPod, USB, AUX, SAT 1 or SAT 2 menu...> (Enter) <Audio Settings...> (Enter) <Equalizer...> (Enter).

Move the **JOYSTICK** left or right to set the level. Use the **JOYSTICK** (up or down) to select the next frequency. Five frequencies can be adjusted.

Press **ENTER** to save any changes and exit. Press **BACK** to exit without saving any changes.

Dolby Surround Pro-Logic II

Dolby Surround Pro-Logic II, with its centre speaker in the dashboard, provides more realistic sound reproduction.

The normal left and right stereo channels are divided into left-centre-right. In addition, ambient surround sound is produced through the rear speaker channels.

Not available in Radio mode.

Dolby Surround Pro-Logic II and the Dolby icon are trade-marks of Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation. The Dolby Pro-Logic II Surround System is manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation.



Bang & Olufsen Audio Sound Settings

To access sound settings press and hold **SOUND** to enter sound setting mode. Then press repeatedly until the required sound setting is shown on the **DISPLAY**. Turn the **TUNING** dial to the desired setting.

Bass - Level for Bass

Treble - Level for Treble

Fader - Balance between the front and rear speakers

Balance - Balance between the left and right speakers

Surround - Level for surround sound

Sound Focus

The focus of the sound from the Audio system can be optimized for either the Driver or Driver and Passenger.

Select:

Driver - The focus of the sound is optimized for the Driver only.

Front - The focus of the sound is optimized for both the Driver and the Passenger.

Auto - The Audio system automatically detects if Driver only or Driver and Passenger are present.



The Audio system detects seat occupancy by seat belt engagement.



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN

Radio Functions

[1] ON/OFF- Audio ON and OFF.

[2] VOLUME- Volume control.

[3] DISPLAY- Shows options, menus and information.

[4] TUNING- Turn to manually search stations or navigate in the menus.

[5] TP- Not used.

[6] SCAN- Find and store the strongest stations.

[7] AUTO- Automatic station search.

[8] MENU- Opens the main menu.

[9] AM/FM- Shift between FM1, FM2 and AM.

[10] ENTER- Select in the menu or open a selection.

[11] JOYSTICK- Press left or right to auto search the next station. Press and hold left or right to manually select a station. Press up or down to navigate in the menus or preset stations.

[12] BACK- Press to navigate back one in the menu. Press and hold to navigate back to the default screen. Cancel a selection.

[13] KEYPAD- Set station presets and menu shortcuts.



Steering Wheel Controls

[14] SCROLL- Navigate through the preset radio stations.

[15] VOLUME- Volume control.

Automatic Tuning

Select FM1, FM2 or AM using the **AM/FM** button. Press the **JOYSTICK** (left or right) to search for the next strong station.

Press left or right again to initiate a new search.



If no stations are found press either button again to cancel.

Manual Tuning

There are two ways to tune into a station manually.

- Turn the **TUNING** dial to set the desired frequency.
- Press and hold the **JOYSTICK** left or right.

The frequency rolls slowly in the selected direction and increases speed after a few seconds.

Release the button when the desired frequency shows on the **DISPLAY**. If the frequency needs adjusting, briefly touch one of the arrows.

Storing Stations

10 stations can be stored for FM1, FM2 or AM (a total of 30 stations). To store stations:

Tune to the desired station. Press and hold the **KEYPAD** button (0-9) where the station is to be stored. The sound will be muted for a couple of seconds and 'Station Stored' will show on the **DISPLAY**.

Select a stored station by either pressing a **KEYPAD** (0 to 9) button or use the **SCROLL** button to scroll through the station list.

Autostoring Stations

Up to ten AM or FM stations can be automatically tuned and stored in a separate memory.

Select FM1, FM2 or AM using the **AM/FM** button. Start the search by pressing and holding **AUTO** (more than two seconds).

‘Autostoring.’ shows on the **DISPLAY** and a number of strong stations (maximum ten) from the selected frequency band are stored in the autostore memory. If there are no stations that are sufficiently strong, ‘No AST Found’ shows on the **DISPLAY**.



If more than ten stations are found, the ten strongest are selected. This function is particularly useful if you are in an area in which you are unfamiliar with the radio stations and their frequencies.

The stations are stored on the **KEYPAD** (buttons 0-9). When the radio is in autostore mode, ‘Autostoring’ is shown on the **DISPLAY**.

Return to the ordinary radio mode by pressing and releasing **AUTO** (less than 0.7 seconds). Pressing and releasing either **AUTO** or **BACK** will also cancel Autostoring.

Select an Auto stored station by pressing **AUTO**, then a **KEYPAD** (0 to 9) button or the **SCROLL** button to scroll through the station list.

Automatic Search for Transmitter

‘PI seek’ shows on the **DISPLAY** when reception is poor for the selected station. The radio automatically searches for the strongest transmission for that station. ‘PI seek Back to cancel’ is shown on the **DISPLAY** until the station is found.

Scanning

Scanning automatically searches for the next strong FM or AM station signals. When the radio finds a station, scanning pauses for approximately eight seconds, after which it continues.

Select FM or AM with the **AM/FM** button.

Press **SCAN**. ‘Scan’ shows on the **DISPLAY** and each found station will play for approximately eight seconds. Press **SCAN** or **BACK** to accept the station.



If no stations are found press either button again to cancel.

Programme Type

Use the Programme Type (PTY) function to select between the various programme types.

PTY - ON or OFF

Press **MENU** and navigate to <FM Menu...> (Enter) <PTY...> (Enter) <Show PTY> (Enter).

When ON the station's programme type will be shown on the **DISPLAY**, e.g. Current affairs, Information, Drama, Rock music, etc.



Not all radio stations have a PTY designation.

Searching for a Specific PTY

Press **MENU** and navigate to <FM Menu...> (Enter) <PTY...> (Enter) <PTY...>. Press **ENTER** for one or more of the listed programme types. The PTY symbol shows on the **DISPLAY** when the first selection is made and the radio is set to stand-by for PTY. Press **BACK** to go back.

Navigate to <FM Menu...> (Enter) <PTY...> (Enter) <Search PTY> (Enter). If the radio finds a station with the selected programme type, this is played.

If a station with the selected programme type can not be found, the **DISPLAY** shows 'No Station Found' and the radio returns to the previous frequency.

PTY is then on stand-by until the selected programme type is broadcast. When this happens, the radio automatically selects the station broadcasting the programme type.

Clear All PTY

Press **MENU** and navigate to <FM Menu...> (Enter) <PTY...> (Enter) <Clear all PTY...> (Enter).

The PTY symbol is removed from the **DISPLAY** and the radio returns to normal mode.

Automatic Frequency Updating

The Automatic Frequency (AF) Updating function is normally ON and makes sure that the radio tunes to the strongest available transmitter.

AF - ON or OFF

Press **MENU** and navigate to <FM Menu...> (Enter) <Advanced radio settings...> (Enter) <AF> (Enter).

When ON 'AF' is shown on the **DISPLAY**.

Satellite Radio Functions

[1] ON/OFF- Press for audio ON and OFF.

[2] VOLUME- Volume control.

[3] DISPLAY- Presents options, menus and information.

[4] KEYPAD- Station presets and menu shortcuts.

[5] TUNING- Turn to manually search stations or navigate in the menus.

[6] SOUND- Press for less than three seconds to show the song category menu.



[7] **SCAN**- Automatic station search.

[8] **AUTO**- Select radio text.

[9] **MENU**- Opens the main menu.

[10] **MODE**- Select SAT 1 or SAT 2.

[11] **ENTER**- Select in the menu or open a selection.

[12] **JOYSTICK**- Press left or right once to move to the next or previous station. Press to navigate in the menus or select preset stations.

[13] **BACK**- Press to navigate back one in the menu. Press and hold to navigate back to the default screen. Cancel a selection.

Steering Wheel Controls

[14] **SCROLL**- Navigate the channel list.

[15] **VOLUME**- Volume control.

SIRIUS ID

The SIRIUS ID is required when contacting the SIRIUS Call Centre. It is used to start your account and when making any account transactions. The SIRIUS ID is sometimes referred to as the Electronic Serial Number (ESN).

To access the 12 digit SIRIUS ID:

Press MENU and navigate to <Sirius menu...> (Enter) <Advanced sirius settings...> (Enter) <Sirius ID> (Enter).

Selecting Satellite Radio Mode

Press **ON/OFF** to set the audio system ON. Press **MODE** repeatedly to select SAT 1 or 2.

Activating Satellite Radio

Tune to a satellite channel that has no audio, which means that the channel is unsubscribed and the text 'Call 888-539-SIRIUS to Subscribe' is shown.

Call SIRIUS on:

USA: 1-888-539-SIRIUS (7474).

Canada: 1-866-635-9632

When asked for the SIRIUS ID number press **AUTO** to show this number.

'Updating Subscription' will be shown while the subscription is being updated, after which the **DISPLAY** will return to the normal view.

Channels

Selecting a Channel Category

With Audio active, press the **MODE** button repeatedly to select SAT 1 or 2. Press **ENTER** to access the song category menu.

Using the **JOYSTICK** navigate through the list of categories and press **ENTER** to select a category. Move left or right to select a channel.

Audio starts after a few seconds.

 The category 'All' is default, which enables you to navigate through the entire list of available satellite channels.

 Channel categories are automatically updated several times a year. This takes approximately two minutes and will interrupt normal broadcasting. A message will be shown while updating is in progress. Information on channel or feature updates is available at www.sirius.com.

Selecting a Channel

There are three ways of tuning in a channel:

- Press and hold the **JOYSTICK** (up or down) or the **SCROLL** button. The scrolling function begins slowly and increases speed after approximately 5 seconds. Release the to listen to the currently tuned channel
- Turn the **TUNING** dial to navigate through the available channels
- Through direct channel entry

Direct Channel Entry

The SIRIUS satellite channels are numbered consecutively throughout all of the categories.

To access a channel directly:

Press MENU and navigate to <Sirius menu...> (Enter) <Direct channel entry> (Enter).

Use the **KEYPAD** to enter the channel's number. Press **ENTER**. The radio will tune to this channel, even if it belongs to a category other than the currently selected one.

 The numbers of skipped or locked channels will not be shown.



If a channel is locked, the access code must be entered before the channel can be selected (Refer to 'Unlocking a Channel', page 8.21).

Scanning

Press **SCAN** to automatically search through the list of satellite channels.

Storing a Channel

A total of 20 satellite channels can be stored; 10 channels each for SAT 1 and 2. A long press on one of the **KEYPAD** numbers stores the currently tuned channel on that key.

Pressing on a **KEYPAD** number while the radio is in SAT 1 or 2 mode will tune to the preset satellite channel stored on that button, regardless of the currently selected channel category.

Song Seek and Song Memory

The Song Seek and Song Memory functions provide both audio and visual notification when SIRIUS is broadcasting your favorite songs. Song Seek enables you to store the name of the song for future advance notification when that song is being played. The Song Memory feature makes it possible to view all of the current songs that are stored in memory.

Song Memory

Up to ten songs can be saved in the system's memory.

When the song is playing press **MENU** and navigate to <Sirius menu...> (Enter) <Add song to song mem> (Enter).

If a new song is selected when the memory is full, a prompt to delete the last song on the list will show. Press **ENTER** to delete the last song on the list. The remaining songs in the list will move down one position, and the newly added song will be placed at the top of the list.

View Song Memory List

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Sirius menu...> (Enter) <Advanced sirius settings...> (Enter) <Song memory> (Enter).

Scroll through the song list using the **JOYSTICK**₁. Press the **TUNING** dial twice to delete the song if required.

₁. The **TUNING** dial can also be used.

Song Seek

When a satellite radio channel plays one of the songs stored in the song memory, the listener will be alerted by a text message and an audible signal.

Press **ENTER** to listen to the song or **EXIT** to cancel.

To start or stop the song seek function:

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Sirius menu...> (Enter) <Song seek> (Enter).

When the song has ended, the radio will stay tuned to the channel on which the song was played.

Radio Text

The type of text information shown about the song currently playing can be changed. Use the **AUTO** button or the menu to show the Artist, Title, Composer, or set radio text OFF.

Skip Options

This function is used to remove a channel from the list of available channels.

Skip Current Channel

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Sirius menu...> (Enter) <Advanced sirius settings...> (Enter) <Skip options> (Enter) <Channel Skip List> (Enter). Select a category in the list and press **ENTER**.

Skip channels in the list by pressing **ENTER**.

Unskip all Channels

This permanently removes all channels from the skip list and makes them available for selection.

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Sirius menu...> (Enter) <Advanced sirius settings...> (Enter) <Skip options> (Enter) <Channel Unskip all channels> (Enter).

Temporally Unskip all Channels.

This function will temporarily unskip all channels and make them available for selection. The channels stay on the skip list and will again be skipped the next time the ignition is set to ON.

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Sirius menu...> (Enter) <Advanced sirius settings...> (Enter) <Skip options> (Enter) <Temporally Unskip all Ch.> (Enter).

Channel Lock

Access to specific channels can be restricted (locked). A locked channel will not provide audio, song titles, or artist information. Channels must be unlocked to be available for selection.



All channels are initially unlocked at delivery.

Locking a Channel

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Sirius menu...> (Enter) <Lock Options> (Enter) <Channel Lock List> (Enter). Enter the channel access code₁ and press **ENTER**. Select a category in the list and press **ENTER**. Lock channels in the list presented by pressing **ENTER**.

The channel is now locked and a checked box will be shown to show this. It will be necessary to enter the channel access code in order to listen to a locked channel.

Unlocking a Channel

A channel's access code₁ is required to unlock a channel.

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Sirius menu...> (Enter) <Advanced sirius settings...> (Enter) <Lock options> (Enter) <Channel lock list> (Enter).

¹. The default code is 0000. If the code has been forgotten, view the access code (Refer to 'View Access Code', page 8.22).

Unlock all Channels

This removes all channels from the locked list and makes them available for selection.

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Sirius menu...> (Enter) > Advanced sirius settings...> (Enter) > Lock options > (Enter) > Channel Unlock all channels > (Enter).

Temporally Unlock All Channels.

This function will temporarily unlock all channels. The channels stay on the locked list and will again be locked the next time the ignition is set to ON.

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Sirius menu...> (Enter) > Advanced sirius settings...> (Enter) > Lock options > (Enter) > Temporary unlock all ch.> (Enter).

Change Code

This function makes it possible to change the channel access code. The default code is 0000.

To change the code:

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Sirius menu...> (Enter) > Advanced sirius settings...> (Enter) > Lock options > (Enter) > Change Code > (Enter). Enter the current code and press **ENTER**.

Enter the new code and press **ENTER**. Confirm the new code and press **ENTER**.

If an incorrect code is entered, the text 'Incorrect Code!' is shown.

View Access Code

If the access code has been forgotten:

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Sirius menu...> (Enter) > Advanced sirius settings...> (Enter) > Sirius ID > (Enter). Press and hold **ENTER** for two seconds. The current code will be shown.

Your Aston Martin dealer can also provide you with assistance.

CD Changer Functions

[1] **ON/OFF**- Audio ON and OFF.

[2] **VOLUME**- Volume control.

[3] **DISPLAY**- Shows options, menus and information.

[4] **KEYPAD**- Buttons 1- 6 to select CD and menu shortcuts.

[5] **TUNING**- Turn to manually change CD tracks or navigate in the menu.

[6] **TP**- Not used.

[7] **SCAN**- 10 seconds of each track is played. Press once again to select a track.



[8] **MENU**- Opens the main menu.

[9] **MODE**- Select CD.

[10] **ENTER**- Select in the menu or open a selection.

[11] **JOYSTICK**- Press left or right to move to the next or previous track. Press left or right and hold to search within a track or the whole CD. The search continues as long as the Joystick is pressed. Press up or down to navigate in the menus.

[12] **BACK**- Press to navigate back one in the menu, press and hold to navigate back to the default screen. Cancel a selection.

Opening for CD.

[13] **EJECT**- Eject CD.

Steering Wheel Controls

[14] **SCROLL**- Navigate through the music tracks.

[15] **VOLUME**- Volume control.

⚠ *Use only 4 ¾ in (12 cm). CDs. Do not use CDs with adhesive disc labels. The heat from the CD player can cause the label to come loose from the disc. The CD player could be damaged.*

⚠ *Do not use CDs that are warped or look warped (critical measurement for CD warp is 0.7 mm (0.03 in) - anything more than this may cause problems). The CD player will not be able hold the CD correctly (because of the warp), this may cause a jam in the CD player.*

📖 *If the quality of the CD does not comply with the requirements of standard EN60908 or if it has been recorded using poor equipment, sound quality may be poor or playback interrupted.*

Loading CDs

The CD changer can hold up to six discs.

Press the **MODE** button repeatedly to select CD. Select an empty position using the **KEYPAD** (buttons 1 to 6) or use the **JOYSTICK** (up or down). The **DISPLAY** shows which positions are empty. Insert a CD into the changer.

Make sure that 'Insert disc' shows before inserting a new disc.

Selecting a CD

Select the CD to play using **KEYPAD** buttons 1-6 or the **JOYSTICK** (up or down). The number of the disc and track are shown on the **DISPLAY**.

Changing Tracks

Press the **JOYSTICK** (left or right), the **SCROLL** button, or turn the **TUNING** dial to play the next or previous track. The track number is shown on the **DISPLAY**.

Fast Forward and Rewind

Press and hold the **JOYSTICK** (left or right) to search forwards or backwards within a track or the whole disc. Searching continues for as long as the button is depressed.

Pause Mode

When the volume is at zero, play will pause. Start play by turning the volume up.

Random Play

Plays tracks from a CD or CDs in random order.

Press **MENU** and navigate to <CD Menu...> (Enter) <Random...> (Enter) Select <Off>, <Single disc> or <All discs> (Enter) for the player to randomly choose from none, one or all CDs.

'RND' or 'RND ALL' is shown on the **DISPLAY** while the function is ON. Press the **JOYSTICK** (left or right) or **SCROLL** button to select the next or previous random track.

Press **BACK** to stop random play.

Scan

Press **SCAN** to play the first ten seconds of each track. While a scan is in progress press **SCAN** again or **BACK** to play a track.

Disc Text - ON or OFF

Some CDs have title information. The information is shown as text on the **DISPLAY**.

Press **MENU** and navigate to <CD Menu...> (Enter) <Disc text> (Enter).

If information is stored on the disc, this is shown on the **DISPLAY**.

Ejecting one CD

Press **EJECT**.

 *For traffic safety reasons the CD stays out for 12 seconds. The player will then draw back in the disc and set to pause mode. Press CD to start the player.*

Ejecting all CDs

Press and hold **EJECT** (for longer than two seconds). The entire magazine is emptied, CD by CD. 'Eject all' is shown on the **DISPLAY**.

 *This function can only be used when the vehicle is stationary and is interrupted if the vehicle starts to move. For traffic safety reasons, the ejected CD stays out for 12 seconds. It must then be removed, or the function is cancelled.*

iPod and USB Functions

The iPod controls will not operate while connected to the vehicle Audio system. All functionality will be from the vehicle Infotainment system.

[1] ON/OFF- Press for audio ON and OFF.

[2] VOLUME- Volume control.

[3] DISPLAY- Shows options, menus and information.

[4] KEYPAD- Buttons 0 – 9 track selection and menu shortcuts.

[5] TUNING- Turn to manually to change tracks or navigate in the menus.

[6] TP- Not used.

[7] SCAN- 10 seconds of each track is played. Press once again to select a track.

[8] MENU- Opens the main menu.

[9] MODE- Select USB, iPod.

[10] ENTER- Open the file system, select in the menu or open a selection.

[11] JOYSTICK- Press left or right to move to the next track or previous. Press left or right and hold to search within a track or the whole music folder. The search continues as long as the Joystick is pressed. Press up or down to navigate in the menus.

[12] BACK- Press to move back one action. Press and hold to move back to the default screen.

Steering Wheel Controls

[13] SCROLL- Navigate through the music tracks.

[14] VOLUME- Volume control.



iPod and USB Connection

 *The iPod port is compatible with generation three iPods onwards.*

 *The USB port is only compatible with USB storage devices, e.g. Memory Sticks.*

 On initial connection and on every engine start the system will synchronize with the connected device. This will take a short while to complete.

Locate the iPod cable or the USB socket in the armrest cubby box and connect the:

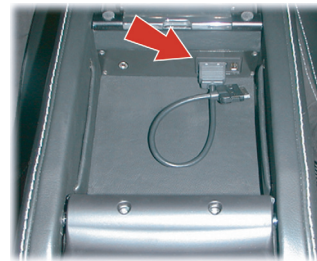
- iPod player cable to the iPod cable
- USB device to the USB port

If not already ON, set the Audio system to ON.

Repeatedly press the **MODE** button until either 'iPod' or 'USB' shows on the **DISPLAY**. The iPod or USB device can now be operated by the Audio system.

Playing Tracks

Once the mode has been set to either iPod or USB play automatically starts.



Selecting Tracks

Press **ENTER** to show the music folder list. Using the **JOYSTICK** (up or down) or the **TUNING** dial navigate through the folder list or music tracks. Press **ENTER** to open a folder or play a track.

Pause Mode

When the volume is at zero, play will pause. Start play by turning the volume up.

Fast Forward and Rewind

Press and hold down the **JOYSTICK** (left or right) to search within a track or the whole music folder. The search continues as long as the button is depressed.

Changing Tracks

Press the **JOYSTICK** (left or right), or the **SCROLL** button, or turn the **TUNING** dial to play the next or previous track.

Scan

Press **SCAN** to play the first ten seconds of each track. While a scan is in progress press **SCAN** again or **BACK** to play the required track.

Random

Plays tracks from the music folder(s) in random order.

Press **MENU** and navigate to <iPod Menu...> or <USB Menu...> (Enter) <Random...> (Enter). Select <Off>, <Folder> or <All> (Enter) for the player to randomly choose from none, one or all music folders.

'RND' or 'RND ALL' is shown in the **DISPLAY** while the function is ON.

Press the **JOYSTICK** (left or right) or the **SCROLL** button to select the next or previous random track.

Auxiliary Functions

[1] ON/OFF- Press for audio ON and OFF.

[2] VOLUME- Volume control.

[3] DISPLAY- Shows options, menus and information.

[4] KEYPAD- Menu shortcuts.

[5] TUNING- Turn to navigate in the menus.

[6] TP- Not used.

[7] MENU- Opens the main menu.

[8] MODE- Select AUX.

[9] ENTER- Select in the menu or open a selection.

[10] JOYSTICK- Press to navigate in the menus.

[11] BACK- Press to move back one action. Press and hold to move back to the default screen.

Steering Wheel Controls

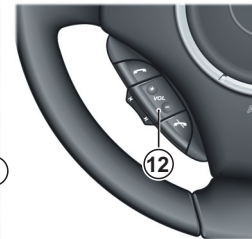
[12] **VOLUME**- Volume control.

Audio Device Connection

The auxiliary input socket is provided to connect audio devices which can not be connected using the iPod or USB connections.

When an audio device is connected to the Infotainment system using the auxiliary socket all control of the device will stay with the device.

Locate the Auxiliary socket in the armrest cubby box and connect the audio device to the auxiliary socket using a suitable cable.



If not already ON, set the Audio system to ON. Repeatedly press the **MODE** button until 'AUX' shows on the **DISPLAY**. The media device will now play through Audio system.

 Only volume control will be available from the vehicle Audio system. All other functionality will be from the Audio device.



Audio Device Volume

The vehicle Audio system volume can be set at a higher or lower starting volume for the audio device.

Press **MENU** and navigate to <AUX menu...> (Enter) <AUX input volume...> (Enter). Turn the **TUNING** dial to set the volume level.

Press and hold **BACK** to return to the main display.

Menus

Radio Menu

Aston Martin Audio

1) FM Menu...

- 1) News
- 2) PTY...
 - 1) Select PTY...
 - 2) Search PTY
 - 1) Clear all PTY...
 - 2) Select PTY station
 - 3) Show PTY (ON or OFF)
- 3) Radio text
- 4) Advanced Radio Settings...
 - 1) TP...
 - 1) TP station...
 - 2) TP search
 - 2) News station...
 - 3) AF
 - 4) Regional
 - 5) EON...
 - 6) Reset all...
- 5) Auto. volume control

6) Audio Settings...

- 1) Surround FM...
- 2) Equalizer...
- 3) Auto. volume control
- 4) Sound settings...
- 5) Reset all...

1) AM Menu...

- 1) Audio Settings...
 - 1) Surround AM...
 - 2) Equalizer...
 - 3) Sound settings...
 - 4) Auto. volume control
 - 5) Reset all...

Bang & Olufsen Audio

1) FM Menu...

- 1) News
- 2) PTY...
 - 1) Select PTY...
 - 2) Search PTY
 - 3) Clear all PTY...
 - 4) Select PTY station
 - 3) Show PTY (ON or OFF)
- 3) Radio text
- 4) Advanced Radio Settings...
 - 1) TP...
 - 1) TP station...
 - 2) TP search
 - 2) News station...
 - 3) AF
 - 4) Regional
 - 5) EON...
 - 6) Reset all...
- 5) Auto. volume control...

1) AM Menu...

- 1) Auto. volume control...

SIRIUS Menu

Aston Martin Audio

1) SIRIUS menu...

- 1) Add song to memory
- 2) Direct channel entry
- 3) SIRIUS radio text
- 4) Song seek
- 5) Advanced SIRIUS settings...
 - 1) Song memory
 - 2) Skip options
 - 1) Channel skip list
 - 2) Unskip all channels
 - 3) Temporally unskip all ch.
 - 3) Lock options
 - 1) Channel lock list
 - 2) Unlock all channels
 - 3) Temporally unlock all ch.
 - 4) Change code
 - 4) SIRIUS ID

6) Audio settings...

- 1) Surround SIRIUS...
- 2) Equalizer...
- 3) Auto volume control...
- 4) Reset all

Bang & Olufsen Audio

1) SIRIUS menu...

- 1) Add song to memory
- 2) Direct channel entry
- 3) SIRIUS radio text
- 4) Song seek
- 5) Advanced SIRIUS settings...
 - 1) Song memory
 - 2) Skip options
 - 1) Channel skip list
 - 2) Unskip all channels
 - 3) Temporally unskip all ch.
 - 3) Lock options
 - 1) Channel lock list
 - 2) Unlock all channels
 - 3) Temporally unlock all ch.
 - 4) Change code
 - 4) SIRIUS ID
 - 5) Auto volume control...
 - 6) Reset all

CD Changer Menu

Aston Martin Audio

1) CD Menu...

- 1) Random...
 - 1) Off
 - 2) Single disc
 - 3) All discs
- 2) News
- 3) Disc text
- 4) Audio Settings...
 - 1) Surround CD...
 - 2) Equalizer...
 - 3) Auto. volume control...
 - 4) Sound settings...
 - 5) Reset all

Bang & Olufsen Audio

1) CD Menu...

- 1) Random...
 - 1) Off
 - 2) Single disc
 - 3) All discs
- 2) News
- 3) Disc text
- 4) Auto. volume control...

iPod and USB Menu

Aston Martin Audio

1) iPod Menu..., USB Menu...

- 1) Random...
 - 1) Off
 - 2) Folder
 - 3) All
- 2) News
- 3) Track Information
- 4) Audio Settings...
 - 1) Surround iPod or USB...
 - 2) Equalizer...
 - 3) Auto. volume control...
 - 4) Sound settings...
 - 5) Reset all

Bang & Olufsen Audio

1) iPod Menu... or USB Menu...

- 1) Random...
 - 1) Off
 - 2) Folder
 - 3) All
- 2) News
- 3) Track Information
- 4) Auto. volume control...

AUX Menu

Aston Martin Audio

1) AUX Menu...

- 1) AUX input volume...
- 2) News
- 3) Audio Settings...
 - 1) Surround AUX...
 - 2) Equalizer...
 - 3) Auto. volume control...
 - 4) Sound settings...
 - 5) Reset all

Bang & Olufsen Audio

1) AUX Menu...

- 1) AUX input volume...
- 2) News
- 3) Auto. volume control...



ASTON MARTIN

Hands-Free Phone

Contents

Introduction	9.2	Removing a Paired Phone	9.8
Hands-Free Functions	9.2	Selecting a Phone.....	9.8
Hands-Free Phone ON.....	9.3	Calls.....	9.9
Menus.....	9.4	Phone Book	9.10
Audio Settings	9.4	Voice Mailbox.....	9.11
Connecting a Phone.....	9.5	Last Ten Numbers	9.11
Initial Pairing	9.6	Telephone Menu.....	9.11
Pairing Additional Phones.....	9.6		

Introduction

If your vehicle has the Hands-Free phone system installed a mobile device equipped with Hands-Free (Bluetooth) capability can be connected wirelessly to the vehicle's Hands-Free phone system. The vehicle's Hands-Free phone system then provides remote control of a range of the mobile phone's functions. The mobile phone can always be operated by its own keys regardless of whether or not it is connected.

The Hands-Free system is available when the vehicle key is in position 'I' or 'II'. If, during a call, the vehicle key is moved to position 'O' or removed the call will transfer to the mobile phone after approximately six seconds.



The Hands-Free phone system will not recognise a mobile phone, even if it is 'paired' (Refer to page 9.5), if the mobile phone does not have Bluetooth enabled. For more information refer to the user guide for your mobile phone.

Hands-Free Functions

[1] VOLUME- Volume control.

[2] DISPLAY- Shows options, menus and information.

[3] TUNING- Navigate through phone book and menus.

[4] MENU- Opens the main menu.

[5] ENTER- Press to answer or make a call, select in the menu or open a selection.

[6] JOYSTICK- Navigate in the menus, move forwards or backwards when entering text and digits.

[7] PHONE- Press to select Hands-Free mode or press and hold to cancel Hands-Free mode.

[8] BACK- End a call, navigate back in the menu, cancel a selection or erase the previous character when entering text and numbers.

[9] KEYPAD- Search through the phone book, speed dial or navigate in the menu.

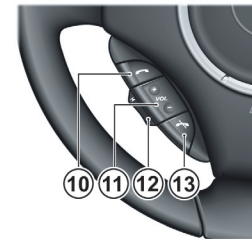
Steering Wheel Controls

[10] CALL- Press to answer a call or press to return to Hands-Free mode from Audio when Hands-Free mode is ON.

[11] VOLUME- Volume control during a call.

[12] SCROLL- Navigate in the menus.

[13] CANCEL- Press to end a call or press to enter Audio mode when Hands-Free mode is selected.



Hands-Free Phone ON

When the Hands-Free system is ON the  symbol will show in the **DISPLAY**. During a call this symbol will change to . When a mobile phone is connected to the Hands-Free system the  symbol will show in the **DISPLAY**.

If, after 30 seconds, the Hands-Free Phone has not been used, the Infotainment system will default to Audio functions. Return to Hands-Free Phone functions by pressing **PHONE** or **CALL**.

Menus

The Hands-Free menu is available when the Hands-Free phone system is ON and selected. If not ON or not selected press **PHONE**. Press **MENU** to access the main menu.

Search Path

Menu paths are shown for each operation in the following format:
<Phone menu...> (Enter) <Phone settings...> (Enter) <Sounds and volume...>



In this chapter when asked to 'Press' a button, this means 'Press and release'. When this is not the case it will be clear in the text.

Several menu options will require a cross in a box  to select an option. Once the menu item is highlighted press **ENTER** to either place a cross in the box or delete the cross. Then press and hold **BACK** to accept and return to the main screen.

Call Menu

Press **MENU**, **ENTER** or **CALL** during an ongoing call to access the following functions

Mute microphone - The Hands-Free system microphone is muted.

Transfer call to mobile or Transfer call to vehicle - The call can be transferred to or from the mobile phone or the vehicle phone.

Phone book - Access the phone book during a call.



Some mobile phones will close the connection when the privacy function is used, this is normal. The vehicle system asks if you want to reconnect.

Audio Settings

Call Volume

During a call the call volume can be regulated using the **VOLUME** dial or button.

Audio System Volume

The audio source can be automatically muted for incoming calls:

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Phone menu...> (Enter) <Phone settings...> (Enter) <Sounds and volume...> (Enter) <Mute radio> (Enter).

If mute radio is OFF select one of the audio sources to control the Audio system volume during an ongoing call.

Audio System Control

Not during a call.

When the Audio system is in operation while Hands-Free mode is ON press **CALL** to return to Hands-Free mode.

Ring Volume

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Phone menu...> (Enter) <Phone settings...> (Enter) <Sounds and volume...> (Enter) <Ring volume> (Enter). Adjust using the **TUNING** dial.

Ring Signals

The vehicle system has integrated ring signals that can be selected: Press **MENU** and navigate to <Phone menu...> (Enter) <Phone settings...> (Enter) <Sounds and volume...> (Enter) <Ring signal> (Enter) <Select Ring signal 1, 2, 3 etc.> (Enter).



The connected mobile phone's ring signal is not muted when one of the vehicles integrated signals is used.

Connecting a Phone

A connection between the vehicle Hands-Free system and a mobile phone is called a 'Paired Link'. When a paired link is set up the Hands-Free system remembers the mobile phone's ID.

Once the Hands-Free system and the mobile phone are paired, the Hands-Free system automatically connects every time the ignition is set to ON if the Hands-Free system (Press **PHONE**) and the mobile phone are ON.

A mobile phone can be paired either using the vehicle Hands-Free system or by using the mobile phone.

This system supports paired links with up to five phones.



The process of initiating a Hands-Free connection with a phone varies per phone manufacturer. For more information refer to the user's guide for your mobile phone.

Disconnecting

The mobile phone will **automatically** disconnect when moved out of the Hand-Free system's range or Bluetooth is made unavailable on the mobile phone.

The mobile phone will **manually** disconnect when the Hands-Free system is set to OFF. Press and hold **PHONE** until  is removed from the **DISPLAY**. The function is also stopped when the ignition is set to OFF.

If the mobile phone has been disconnected during an ongoing call, the call will transfer to the mobile phone.



Some mobile phones require that the transfer is confirmed from the phone's keypad.

Initial Pairing

Use this procedure when pairing the first mobile phone to the Hands-Free system.

If the Hands-Free system is not ON or in use, press **PHONE**.

The **DISPLAY** will show 'No Paired Phones. Press **ENTER** to Add a Phone. Press **EXIT** to cancel.' Press **ENTER**.

The Hands-Free system will asked if Bluetooth is in discoverable mode (refer to the mobile phone manufactures instructions). If yes press **ENTER**. After a short while a list of phones which are in range and in dicscoverable mode will be shown.

 If the  symbol is shown in the **DISPLAY** when the ignition is ON, initial pairing can be completed using the mobile phone (Refer to 'Pairing Using the Mobile Phone', page 9.7).

Press the **JOYSTICK** (up or down), **SCROLL** button or turn the **TUNING** dial to navigate to the required mobile phone and press **ENTER**.

The **DISPLAY** will then ask for a passkey to be entered into the mobile phone. The mobile phone will prompt for the passkey. Enter the passkey into the mobile phone.

The **DISPLAY** will show 'Phone Connecting...' then, if successful, 'Synchronizing'. Once synchronizing has completed the mobile phone is ready for use.

 If the passkey is not entered after 20 seconds the screen will time-out.

 Synchronizing automatically places all the mobile phone contacts onto the vehicle system (Refer to 'Phone Book', page 9.10).

Pairing Additional Phones

Pairing Using the Hands-Free System

 Disconnect any in use phones before pairing additional phones. If a phone is connected to the Hands-Free system pairing a new phone will not be possible until the Hands-Free system has no in use Bluetooth connections.

 If, after 30 seconds, the Hands-Free Phone has not been used, the Infotainment system will default to audio functions. Return to Hands-Free Phone functions by pressing **PHONE** or **CALL**.

Check that the mobile phone has Bluetooth ON and visible. Check that the Hands-Free system is ON ( symbol will show in the **DISPLAY**).

The Hands-Free system automatically searches for the last used phone. If the last used phone is not found a list of paired phones will show along with <Add phone>. Select <Add phone> to pair a new phone to the system.

If the last used phone is found press **MENU** and navigate to <Phone Menu...> (Enter) <Bluetooth...> (Enter) <Change phone...> (Enter) <Add Phone...>.

Press **ENTER**. The Hands-Free system will asked if Bluetooth is in discoverable mode (refer to the mobile phone manufactures instructions). If yes press **ENTER**. After a short while a list of phones which are in range and in dicscoverable mode will show.

Press the **JOYSTICK** (up or down), **SCROLL** button or turn the **TUNING** dial to navigate to the required mobile phone and press **ENTER**.

The **DISPLAY** will then ask for a passkey to be entered into the mobile phone. The mobile phone will prompt for the passkey. Enter the passkey into the mobile phone.

 *If the passkey is not entered after 20 seconds the screen will time-out.*

The **DISPLAY** will show 'Phone Connecting...' then, if successful, 'Synchronizing'. Once synchronizing has completed the mobile phone is ready for use.

 *Synchronizing automatically places all the mobile phone contacts onto the Hands-Free system (Refer to 'Phone Book', page 9.10).*

Pairing Using the Mobile Phone

 *Disconnect any in use phones before pairing additional phones. If a phone is connected to the Hands-Free system pairing a new phone will not be possible until the Hands-Free system has no in use Bluetooth connections.*

Check that the Hands-Free system is ON or in operation ( symbol will show in the **DISPLAY**).

Follow the mobile phone manufactures instructions to search and connect to a new bluetooth device. The phone will search for discoverable Bluetooth devices in its range.

Select 'ASTON MARTIN' from the device list. The phone will prompt for a passkey.



If 'ASTON MARTIN' does not show check that the Hands-Free system is selected and search again.

Press **MENU** (on the vehicle) and move to <Phone menu...> (Enter) <Bluetooth...> (Enter) <Connect from Mobile Phone> (Enter). The **DISPLAY** will then show a passkey, enter the passkey into the mobile phone.



If the passkey is not entered after 20 seconds the screen will time-out.

The **DISPLAY** will show 'Phone Connecting...' then, if successful, 'Synchronizing'.



Synchronizing automatically places all the mobile phone contacts onto the vehicle system (Refer to 'Phone Book', page 9.10).

Once synchronizing has completed the mobile phone is ready for use.

Removing a Paired Phone

Using the Hands-Free system

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Phone menu...> (Enter) <Bluetooth...> (Enter) <Remove Phone> (Enter).

A list of paired phones will show. Navigate to the required phone and press **ENTER** to delete or **BACK** to cancel.

Selecting a Phone



The phone to be selected must have Bluetooth ON, visible and in close proximity to the Hands-Free phone system.

Using the Mobile Phone

If not ON or not selected, press **PHONE**.

Using the Mobile phone, follow the manufactures instructions to search and connect to a Bluetooth device. The phone will search for discoverable Bluetooth devices in its range. Select 'ASTON MARTIN' from the device list. Select Connect.



If 'ASTON MARTIN' does not show check that the Hands-Free system is selected and search again. If 'ASTON MARTIN' still does not show the mobile phone may not be paired (Refer to 'Pairing Additional Phones', page 9.6)

Calls

Using the Vehicle Hands-Free system

With the Hands-Free system already selected, press **MENU** and navigate to <Phone Menu...> (Enter) <Bluetooth...> (Enter) <Change Phone> (Enter). A list of paired phones will show (along with *Add phone*). Navigate to the required phone and press **ENTER** to change or **BACK** to cancel.

Or, if the Hands-Free system is not ON:

Press **PHONE**. The system will then scan for the last used mobile phone. If found and it is the mobile required then press **ENTER**. If the last phone is not found the **DISPLAY** will show a list of paired phones within range (with Bluetooth ON). Navigate to a phone and press **ENTER** to select that phone.

Making a Call

Check that the Hands-Free system is selected ( symbol shows in the **DISPLAY**).

Press **PHONE**, or **CALL** on the steering wheel controls.

- Press the **JOYSTICK** (up or down), **SCROLL** button, or turn the **TUNING** dial to select a contact from the phone book. Press **CALL** or **ENTER** to call.

Or

- Dial the number using the keypad and press **CALL** or **ENTER** to call. Press **BACK** to delete a number. Press and hold **BACK** to delete the whole number.

Ending Calls

To end a call press **CANCEL** or **BACK**.

Reject a Call

Press **CANCEL** or **BACK** while the phone is ringing.

Calling Using Voice Recognition

If the mobile phone supports voice dialling:

Press, hold and release **CALL** or **ENTER**. The amount of time required to hold in **CALL** or **ENTER** is dependant on the mobile phone.

Once 'Voice Tag Dialling' shows on the **DISPLAY**, allow one to two seconds before saying a name. The vehicle system will call the contact.

Receiving Calls

To answer an incoming call press **CALL** or **ENTER**.

Automatic Answer - ON or OFF

The automatic answer function means that calls are accepted automatically after four rings.

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Phone menu...> (Enter) <Phone settings...> (Enter) <Call options...> (Enter) <Automatic answer> (Enter).

Phone Book

The mobile phone's phone book is synchronised automatically to the vehicle system at each connection.

If it is not required to synchronize to phone book:

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Phone menu...> (Enter) <Phone settings...> (Enter) <Synchronizing phone book> (Enter).

If the phone book contains a caller's contact information, this is shown in the **DISPLAY**.



If the mobile phone does not support copying of the phone book, 'List is empty' is shown when copying is finished.

Contact Search

Searching for contacts is only performed in the connected mobile phone's phone book. Either:

Press the **JOYSTICK** (up or down), **SCROLL** button, or turn the **TUNING** dial to bring up the contact list. Navigate to the contact. Press **CALL** or **ENTER** to call.

Or

Use the **KEYPAD** to search the phone book. Press and hold a key (2 to 9) which relates to the first letter of the contact's name. This starts a search in the phone book based on the key's first letter. Navigate to the contact. Press **CALL** or **ENTER** to call.

Or

Press **PHONE**. Press **MENU** and navigate to <Phone menu...> (Enter) <Phone book...> (Enter) <Search> (Enter). Using the **KEYPAD**, enter the first few letters of the contact name, press **ENTER**.

Navigate to a contact. Press **CALL** or **ENTER** to call.

Voice Mailbox

To enter a voice mailbox number:

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Phone menu...> (Enter) <Phone settings...> (Enter) <Call options...> (Enter) <Voice mail number> (Enter) <Enter the number> (Enter).

Or

Press and hold **KEYPAD** number 1 to go to <Voice mail number>. Enter the number and press **ENTER**.

Use the stored number by pressing 1 for several seconds.

To change the voice mail number go to *Voice mail number*. Press and hold **BACK** to delete the whole number or press and release to delete individual numbers. Once the number has been deleted then enter a new number.



If the mobile phone has the voice mail number already stored then this will be placed into the system when synchronizing during pairing.

Last Ten Numbers

Last Ten Dialed Numbers

Press **ENTER**. Use the **JOYSTICK** (up or down), **SCROLL** button, or turn the **TUNING** dial to navigate to the required number. Press **CALL** or **ENTER** to call that number.

Last Ten Missed and Received Numbers

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Phone menu...> (Enter) <Last 10 missed calls> or <Last 10 received calls> (Enter).

Use the **JOYSTICK** (up or down), **SCROLL** button, or turn the **TUNING** dial to navigate to the required number. Press **CALL** or **ENTER** to call that number.



Last ten dialed will also be available.

Telephone Menu

1) Phone Menu...

- 1) Last 10 missed calls
- 2) Last 10 received calls
- 3) Last 10 dialed calls
- 4) Phone book...
 - 1) Search
 - 2) Copy fr. mobile phone
- 5) Bluetooth...
 - 1) Change Phone...
 - 2) Remove Phone
 - 3) Connect from mobile phone
- 6) Phone settings...
 - 1) Call options...
 - 1) Automatic answer
 - 2) Voice mail number
 - 2) Sounds and volume...
 - 1) Ring volume
 - 2) Ring signals...
 - 3) Mute Radio
 - 3) Synchronizing phone book



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN

Satellite Navigation

Contents

Introduction	10.2	Avoid Specific Areas	10.27
Getting Started	10.4	Information	10.29
Easy Mode Settings.....	10.9	Current Position	10.29
Using Easy Mode.....	10.10	Quick Menus	10.29
Advanced Mode Settings.....	10.14	Map View	10.31
Using Advanced Mode	10.17	Map Scroll.....	10.32
Store a Destination.....	10.23	Map symbols.....	10.33
Itinerary	10.25	Frequently Asked Questions	10.36

Introduction

The Satellite Navigation system is an integrated part of the Infotainment centre system along with the Audio system.

This Navigation system has been developed to help guide you to the destination of your choice. The system includes features that enable you to set itineraries, search for certain types of points of interest along your route, store special destinations, etc.

The navigation system can be used without a destination being selected. The map with the position of your vehicle is shown on the **SCREEN** and your vehicle is shown with a blue triangle.

 **Warning: Never use the navigation system or any other feature in the vehicle in a way that distracts you from the task of driving safely.**

 **Warning: Distraction can lead to a serious accident. Set and make changes in the navigation system only with the vehicle parked.**

 **Warning: Be aware of the current traffic situation.**

 **Always use good judgment when following navigation system guidance, and do not follow guidance that seems contrary to your own best judgment. Never use the navigation system or any other feature in your vehicle in a way that distracts you from the task of driving safely. Distraction can lead to a serious accident. Set and make changes in your navigation system only with the vehicle parked. Be aware of the current traffic situation. Always comply with relevant traffic regulations.**

Two modes of operation are available:

Easy Mode - Provides simple functionality to enable the user to select a destination.

Advanced mode - Provides all system functionality.

The Navigation system has all maps and features, for the market area, installed in the vehicle's electronic memory.

A DVD player is provided to install map and feature up-dates as and when available (Refer to 'Map Updates', page 10.3).

The locations used in this chapter do not necessarily reflect known places and are for the purpose of describing operating procedures only.

Global Positioning System

The vehicle's speed sensor and a gyro calculate the current position and the direction of travel of the vehicle using signals from the Global Positioning System (GPS) satellite system.

Screen Care

The **SCREEN** must only be cleaned with a soft, lint free, dampened cloth, or a cloth with a mild window cleaning agent.

Map Updates

Factors such as the constant expansion and rebuilding of the road network, new traffic regulations constantly being introduced etc. means that the digital map database is not always up-to-date. Digital maps are continuously updated and the coverage is increased gradually.

Map updates are available on DVD. For information on the latest versions and installation of Map DVDs, contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

Getting Started

System Controls

[1] **SCREEN**- Shows maps and provides detailed information on route type, distance, etc.

[2] **BACK**- Press to return to the previous menu or to undo a choice.

[3] **NAV**- Press to enable or disable Satellite Navigation controls.

[4] **JOYSTICK**- Navigate through different menu options, etc.

[5] **ENTER**- Press to confirm, select or navigate from one submenu to the next submenu.



Navigation System ON

The vehicle key must be at position 'I' or 'II' in the Ignition Control.

1. Press the **NAV** button (button LED ON).
2. Press **ENTER**. The navigation screen will open. On start up the **SCREEN** will show the option of running the Navigation system in Easy or Advanced mode.

Select <Easy> or <Advanced> using the **JOYSTICK** and press **ENTER**. The user mode can be changed at any time in the system setup menu.

The **SCREEN** defaults to Map view.



The system may need a few seconds to detect your position and movement.

While the **NAV** button LED is ON the **BACK**, **ENTER** and **JOYSTICK** functions only operate the Navigation system.

To use the **BACK**, **ENTER** and **JOYSTICK** functions for Audio or Hands-Free Phone functions either:

- Press the **NAV** button again (button LED OFF).
- or
- Press any Audio button other than **BACK**, **ENTER** and **JOYSTICK**.

Press **NAV** (button LED ON) again to return to Navigation controls.



*Pressing the **AM/FM** or **MODE** buttons will move the current audio source.*

Navigation System OFF



*If in map mode press the **BACK** to view the main menu.*

1. From the main menu move to <Shutdown> and press **ENTER**. The navigation screen will close after a few seconds.
- Press the **NAV** button (button LED OFF) or press any Audio button other than **BACK**, **ENTER** and **JOYSTICK** to return functions back to Audio.



The Navigation system can be accessed even if the ignition is OFF. Always set the vehicle key to position '0' in the Ignition Control or remove the vehicle key when the system is not in use so the battery does not become discharged.

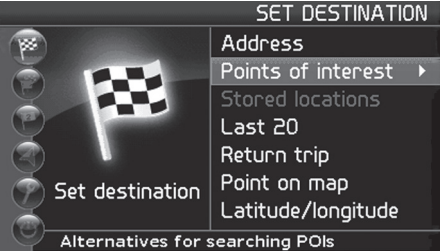
 If the Navigation system is still ON when the vehicle key is remove the system will shut down. When the vehicle key is inserted again and placed at position 'I' or 'II' the Navigation system will start up automatically. Press the **NAV** button to select Navigation controls.

Main Menu

The main screen provides access to system functions. While in the default screen (Map view) press **BACK**. Using the **JOYSTICK** select a menu option and then move right or press **ENTER** to access the functions.

The Navigation menu is only available when the **NAV** button LED is ON.

 When asked to 'Press' a button, this means 'Press and release'. When this is not the case it will be clear in the text.



Easy Menu	Advanced Menu
Set destination	Set destination
Show destination ^a	Itinerary ^a
Remove destination ^a	Next destination ^a
Settings	Current position
Shut down	Settings
	Shut down

^a. Available when a destination is entered.

Search path

Menu paths are shown for each operation in the following format:

<Set destination> (Enter) **<Address>** (Enter)

Menu selections in the text are shown by **<All Cities>**.

Quick Menus



Press **ENTER** while in Map view to access the Quick menus. Select a Quick menu using the **JOYSTICK**. Select an option and press **ENTER** (Refer to 'Quick Menus', page 10.29).

Quick menus make it easier to access certain system options.

Some options are only accessible through the Quick menus.

Guidance Voice

With Audio ON - If guidance voice is ON, when guidance is provided the Audio system will mute until the guidance message has finished.

Phone in Use - If guidance voice is ON, guidance messages will be muted if the Hands-Free phone system is in use.

If a guidance message is broadcast during a phone call an audible 'Beep' will sound.

Demo (Guidance Simulation)

Advanced Mode Only

<Settings> (Enter) **<Start demo>** (Enter)

The demo illustrates how the system works when the vehicle is stationary by simulating a trip to a specified destination. All settings can be made during the demonstration. Select **<Stop demo>** to stop the simulation.

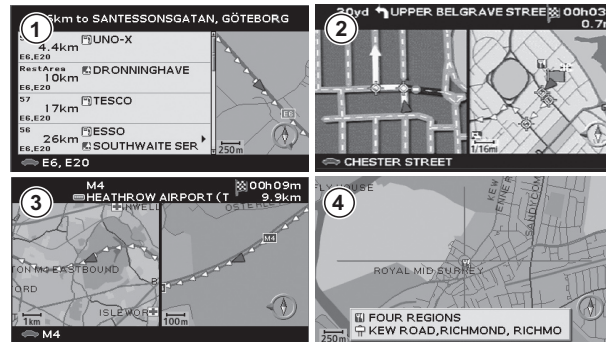
A destination must be entered for the demo to work.

Screen Display

The screen display is determined by factors such as geographic location and settings that have been made, such as map scale, the symbols selected to be shown, etc. (Refer to 'Map symbols', page 10.33).

[1] ON A HIGHWAY- The screen will show the points of interest along the Highway. This function is available even if a destination has not been selected. A scroll list at the right shows that there are additional alternatives.

[2] DETAILED MAP SHOWING INTERSECTIONS- The screen will show lanes on the road to help you select the correct one at the next intersection. This function is only available on major roads. Voice guidance is also always provided.



[3] TWO MAPS HAVE BEEN SELECTED IN SETTINGS- Both sections of the screen display the same map, but with different scales (Refer to 'Map View', page 10.31).

[4] MAP SCROLL MODE- (Refer to 'Map Scroll', page 10.32).

Unverified Roads

A small number of roads in the system may be unverified. This means that information on signs, one-way streets, left turns, etc., may not be accurate. An itinerary containing unverified roads will be shown with gray arrows instead of the usual yellow ones. The system provides information when an unverified road is added to an itinerary and when the vehicle begins to travel on one of these roads.

Compass

The red tip of the compass needle points in a northerly direction on the map. The destination arrow in the outer ring of the compass points in the direction of the destination.

Under *<Map options>* on the Settings menu you can choose to show or hide the compass and destination arrow.



Easy Mode Settings

System Settings

<Settings> (Enter)

Use the **JOYSTICK** to move between the functions and select the desired setting. Confirm settings made using **ENTER**.

<Guiding voice> - A male or a female guiding voice can be selected.

<Guiding volume> - Guiding voice volume.

<Language> - Select the language to be used.

<Color> - Select *<Black>*, *<Blue>*, *<Dark>* or *<Chrome>*.

<Map view> - Select to view either a 2D or 3D map.

<Distance unit> - Select *<US miles>* or *<km>*.

<User mode> - Select *<Easy>* or *<Advanced>*. All destinations will be deleted if changing operating modes.

Using Easy Mode

The Navigation system requires a destination to be entered so that a route to the destination can then be calculated. In Easy mode only one destination can be entered at a time.

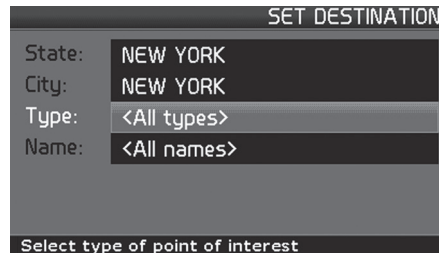
 If the **SCREEN** is in map view press **BACK** to access the main menu.

Destination by an Address

<**Set Destination**> (Enter) <**Address**> (Enter)

<Number> will be highlighted and the last selected State and City will be remembered.

If searching for a destination outside the current State move to <State> and press **ENTER**.



Use the **JOYSTICK** to spell out the desired State from the Character table. Press **ENTER** for each letter.

 When there are no more alternatives, the system fills in the missing letters itself.

A list of States matching that letter combination is shown at the bottom of the **SCREEN**. A scroll bar on the right shows that there are several alternatives in the list. The number shows how many.

Using the **JOYSTICK** move down and select directly from the list in the menu. Select and press **ENTER**.

While scrolling through the list, return to the Character table by pressing **BACK**. Press **BACK** to delete the entered letters one at a time.

Select City

Move to <City> and press **ENTER**.

Use the **JOYSTICK** to spell out the desired City from the Character table. Press **ENTER** for each letter.



When there are no more alternatives, the system fills in the missing letters itself.

A list of Cities matching that letter combination is shown at the bottom of the **SCREEN**. A scroll bar on the right shows that there are several alternatives in the list. The number shows how many.

Using the **JOYSTICK** move down and select directly from the list in the menu. Select and press **ENTER**.

While scrolling through the list, return to the Character table by pressing **BACK**. Press **BACK** to delete the entered letters one at a time.

Select Street

Move to <Street> and press **ENTER**. Select as described for select City.



It is also possible to search for street addresses throughout the State without specifying a particular City.



Street addresses are not stored in the system for some small towns. The town centre, however, can always be specified as the destination.

Once a Street has been selected it is then possible to move to <Start Guide>.

When <Start guide> is selected, the system begins calculating the route and distance to the destination (during this time, a yellow symbol is shown at the top of the **SCREEN**). If a detour is made from the planned route during the trip, the system automatically calculates a new route.



If neither a street number or an intersecting street is specified the system guides to the middle of the street chosen.

Select Street Number or Intersection

If the street number of the selected address is known, it can also be entered to make guidance more exact. An intersecting street can also be entered instead of the street number.

Move to <Number> and press **ENTER**. Existing street numbers are then shown. Select a number using the **JOYSTICK** (right or left) and press **ENTER**.

Once a valid number has been entered move to:

<**Set**> - Confirm entered number.

<**Cancel**> - Go back to the previous screen.

Move to <Interse> and press **ENTER**.

The roads that intersect the selected street are shown in a list. Select from among the streets and press **ENTER**.

Destination by a Zip Code

Using the **JOYSTICK** move to <City> and press **ENTER**. Move to <Zip code> and press **ENTER**.

Use the **JOYSTICK** to select the desired letters and numbers from the character table and press **ENTER**. Move down and select a Zip Code from the list. Press **ENTER**.

While scrolling through the list, press **BACK** to return to the table of characters. Press **BACK** to delete entered characters.



In some States the entire Zip Code cannot be specified.

Move to <Street> and press **ENTER**. Choose letters using the **JOYSTICK** and press **ENTER** or move down and choose a street name directly from the list if options are available.

Then move to <Number> or <Interse> to specify a street number or a crossroads. Select <Start Guide> to obtain guidance to the destination.

Destination by a Facility

<**Set destination**> (Enter) <**POI**> (Enter)

Points of Interest (POI) is a collective name for places such as Petrol Stations, Hotels, Restaurants, Aston Martin dealers, Hospitals, vehicle Parking, etc.

Select <City> and press **ENTER**. Select a City as described earlier.

 When a City is entered POI are searched for around the City area. If you want to search for a POI by <Name> or <Type> without specifying a City, select <City>, press **ENTER**, then **BACK** to delete the current City.

It is possible to first select <Type> then <Name> without entering a City.

Move to <Type> or <Name> and press **ENTER**.

Use the **JOYSTICK** to select the desired letters and press **ENTER** or move down and select directly from the list in the menu. Select and press **ENTER**.

Some POI (when selecting by <Type>) have further options. For example, select petrol station and press **ENTER**.

The names of different petrol chains found in that area are then shown. Select from among the alternatives and press **ENTER**. Return to the character table with **BACK**. Press **BACK** to delete the entered letters one at a time.

Last 20 Destinations

<Set destination> (Enter) <Last 20> (Enter)

Press **ENTER** to see the 20 most recently entered destinations. Move to the desired destination using the **JOYSTICK** and press right or **ENTER** to access the submenu.

<Set as destination> - Start guidance to the destination.

<Delete location> - Deletes the entered destination.

Destination from a Point on the Map

(Set Destination > (Enter) <Point on map> (Enter)

Use the **JOYSTICK** to move the cross on the map and specify a destination directly on the map. The centre of the cross shows the destination on the map.

The name and destination that correspond to the cross position are shown at the bottom of the map.

Press **ENTER** to access the Scroll menu:

<Scale> - Press the **JOYSTICK** right to access the Scale quick menu. Move to <+> or <-> then press **ENTER** repeatedly to zoom in or out of the map. Press **BACK** to return to Map view.

<Set as destination> - Press **ENTER**. Guidance to the destination will start automatically.

Show Destination

<Show Destination> (Enter)

Show Destination provides a map view of the intended destination, time to destination and distance to go. Press **BACK** twice to return to map view.

Advanced Mode Settings

Route Options

<Settings> (Enter) **<Route options>** (Enter)

Use the **JOYSTICK** to move between the functions and select the desired setting. Confirm settings by pressing **ENTER**.

<Route> - Select a **<Fast>**, **<Short>** or **<Easy>** when calculating a route.

<Avoid highways> - Select if Highways are to be avoided when calculating the route.

<Avoid toll roads> - Select if toll roads are to be avoided when calculating the route.



Easy - Avoiding complex intersections and difficult manoeuvres, less narrow roads and junctions.

<Avoid ferries> - Select if ferries are to be avoided when calculating the route.

<Avoid car train> - Select if car trains are to be avoided when calculating the route.

<Avoid time-restr. roads> - Select if the system should avoid time-restricted roads when calculating the route. The correct time zone must be set for the function to work (Refer to 'System Settings', page 10.16).

<Avoid specified areas> - Select the areas the system is to avoid when calculating the route (Refer to 'Avoid Specific Areas', page 10.27).

<Reset to default> - Restore factory settings. Press the **JOYSTICK** right. Select **<OK>** or **<Cancel>** and press **ENTER**.

 *The system can only use larger roads when calculating a route extending over a long distance. If **<No>** is selected for toll roads and Highways, they are avoided to the greatest possible extent and are only used if there is no other reasonable alternative.*

Map Options

<Settings> (Enter) **<Map options>** (Enter)

Use the **JOYSTICK** to move between the functions and select the desired setting. Confirm settings by pressing **ENTER**.

<POI selection> - Press the **JOYSTICK** right to obtain the submenu.

<Show all> - See all POI symbols on the map image.

<Hide all> - No symbols are to be Shown.

<Show selected> - Choose among the symbols.

Select using the **JOYSTICK** (right or left) and confirm settings by pressing **ENTER**.

<Map> - Select if the map is to show. If the map is hidden, the system guides with an arrow.

<Map view> - If in one map view on the main **SCREEN**, select to view either a 2D or 3D map. If in two map view on the **SCREEN** select views for left and right maps (Refer to 'Map View', page 10.31).

<2D Map orientation> - Select whether north or the heading (direction of travel) should be up when looking at the map.

<Compass> - Select if the compass is to be shown on the **SCREEN**.

<Current Location> - Select if the name of the street on which the vehicle is currently driving should be shown at the bottom of the **SCREEN**.

<Reset to default> - Restore factory settings. Press the **JOYSTICK** right. Select **<OK>** or **<Cancel>** and press **ENTER**.

 *<2D Map orientation> is only available when 2D view is selected in **<Map view>**.*

Guiding Options

<Settings> (Enter) **<Guiding options>** (Enter)

Use the **JOYSTICK** to move between the functions and select the desired setting. Confirm settings by pressing **ENTER**.

<Time/dist. to go> - Select **<RTA>** (Remaining time to arrival) or **<ETA>** (Estimated time of arrival). Distance to go will also show. Select **<Hide>** if this information is not to be shown.

<POI warning> - Select if an audible and visual warning is to sound and show when approaching an accident blackspot or a safety camera.

<Reset to default> - Restore factory settings. Press the **JOYSTICK** right. Select **<OK>** or **<Cancel>** and press **ENTER**.



Which areas have accident blackspots and or safety cameras marked on the map is regulated by legislation in the respective States.

System Settings

<(Settings)> (Enter) **<System settings>**

Use the **JOYSTICK** to move between the functions and select the desired setting. Confirm settings made using **ENTER**.

<Guiding voice> - A male or a female guiding voice can be selected.

<Guiding volume> - Guiding voice volume.

<Language> - Select the language to be used.

<Menu color> - Select **<Black>**, **<Chrome>** or **<Blue>**.

<Map color> - Select **<Bright 1>**, **<Bright 2>** or **<Dark>**.

<Screen saver> - Select whether the screen saver is to be used (comes ON after 30 seconds).

<Help> - Select if help texts are to be shown at the bottom of the **SCREEN**.

<Distance unit> - Select **<US miles>** or **<km>**.

Using Advanced Mode

<User mode> - Select *<Easy>* or *<Advanced>*. All destinations will be deleted if changing operating modes.

<Date & time info> - Press the **JOYSTICK** right. Set the date and time format.

<GPS Information> - Press the **JOYSTICK** right to view coordinates and address of the vehicle's position, as well as the number of satellites the system is in contact with.

<About> - System information.

<Reset to default> - Restore factory settings. Press the **JOYSTICK** right. Select *<OK>* or *<Cancel>* and press **ENTER**.

The Navigation system requires a destination to be entered so that a route to the destination can then be calculated. Various destination options are available.

 If the **SCREEN** is in map view press **BACK** to access the main menu.

Once a valid destination has been entered *<Start Guide>* will be available.

Various destinations can be entered and saved as an itinerary (Refer to 'Itinerary', page 10.25).

Destination by an Address

<Set Destination> (Enter) **<Address>** (Enter)



<Number> will be highlighted and the last selected State will be remembered. If searching for a destination outside the current State move to <State> and press **ENTER**.

 Press the **JOYSTICK** right when an arrow is shown on the right of the line. A list of the five last entered States will show. Select the required State, if available, from the list and press **ENTER**.

SET DESTINATION	
State:	NEW YORK ▶
City:	NEW YORK ▶
Number:	<All street numbers>
Street:	<All streets>
Interse.:	<All intersections>
Set	Information
Input street	

Use the **JOYSTICK** to spell out the desired State from the Character table. Press **ENTER** for each letter.

 When there are no more alternatives, the system fills in the missing letters itself.

A list of States matching that letter combination is shown at the bottom of the **SCREEN**. A scroll bar on the right shows that there are several alternatives in the list. The number shows how many.

Using the **JOYSTICK** move down and select directly from the list in the menu. Select and press **ENTER**.

While scrolling through the list, return to the Character table by pressing **BACK**. Press **BACK** to delete the entered letters one at a time.

Select City

Select <City> and press **ENTER**.

Use the **JOYSTICK** to spell out the desired City from the Character table. Press **ENTER** for each letter.

A list of Cities matching that letter combination is shown at the bottom of the **SCREEN**.

 Press the **JOYSTICK** right when an arrow is shown on the right of the line. A list of the five last entered Cities will show. Select the required City, if available, from the list and press **ENTER**.

 When there are no more alternatives, the system fills in the missing letters itself.

A scroll bar on the right shows that there are several alternatives in the list. The number shows how many.

Using the **JOYSTICK** move down and select directly from the list in the menu. Select and press **ENTER**.

While scrolling through the list, return to the Character table by pressing **BACK**. Press **BACK** to delete the entered letters one at a time.

 *States, Cities and Street names are deleted when the destinations in 'Last 20' are deleted.*

Select Street

Move to <Street> and press **ENTER**.

 *It is also possible to search for street addresses throughout the State without specifying a particular City.*

 *Street addresses are not stored in the system for some small towns. The town centre, however, can always be specified as the destination.*

Once a Street has been selected it is then possible to move to <Start Guide>, <Itinerary> (Refer to 'Itinerary', page 10.25) or <Information> (Refer to 'Information', page 10.29).

When <Start guide> is selected, the system begins calculating the route and distance to the destination (during this time, a yellow symbol is shown at the top of the **SCREEN**).

If a detour is made from the planned route during the trip, the system automatically calculates a new route (Refer to 'Route Options', page 10.14) and (Refer to 'Avoid Specific Areas', page 10.27).

 *If neither a street number or an intersecting street is specified the system guides to the middle of the street chosen.*

Select Street Number or Intersection

If the street number of the selected address is known, it can also be entered to make guidance more exact. An intersecting street can also be entered instead of the street number.

Move to <Number> and press **ENTER**. Existing street numbers are then shown. Select a number using the **JOYSTICK** (right or left) and press **ENTER**.

Once a valid number has been entered move to:

<**Set**> - Confirm entered number.

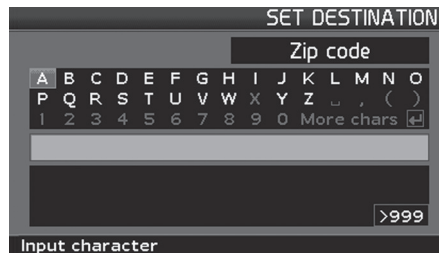
<**Information**> - Provides information on the destination. Press **BACK** and then <Set> or press **BACK** again to cancel.

Move to <Interse> and press **ENTER**.

The roads that intersect the selected street are shown in a list. Select from among the streets and press **ENTER**.

Destination by a Zip Code

Using the **JOYSTICK** move to <City> and press **ENTER**. Move to <Zip code> and press **ENTER**.



Use the **JOYSTICK** to select the desired letters and numbers from the character table and press **ENTER**. Move down and select a Zip Code from the list. Press **ENTER**.

While scrolling through the list, press **BACK** to return to the table of characters. Press **BACK** to delete entered characters.

Move to <Street> and press **ENTER**. Choose letters using the **JOYSTICK** and press **ENTER** or move down and choose a street name directly from the list if options are available.

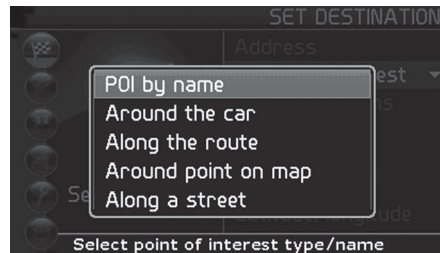


In some States the entire Zip Code cannot be specified.

Destination by a Point of Interest

<Set destination> (Enter) **<Points of interest>** (Enter)

Points of Interest (POI) is a collective name for places such as Petrol Stations, Hotels, Restaurants, Aston Martin dealers, Hospitals, vehicle parking, etc.



<POI by name> - Move to <Type> or <Name> and press **ENTER**. Enter the name of a POI or select a POI type from the list in the menu. The list can vary and only shows the POI of the selected City or area.

<Around the car> - The system searches in a circle with a maximum radius of 155 mile (250 km). The search is stopped when 40 Points of Interest are found.

 It is also possible to search for POI around the vehicle, along the itinerary and along the Highway using the Quick menu (Refer to 'Destination from a Point on the Map', page 10.23).

Press **ENTER** and select <Last 5> or <All types>. Select a Facility from the list and press **ENTER**. Select from the list of Facility names and press **ENTER**. Select <Add to itinerary> or <POI information>.

<Along the route> - Use the procedure described for <Around the car>. When a destination has been specified, the system can search for POI within an area maximum 0.5 mile (1 km) from the route.

<Around point on map> - The system searches the same way as <Around the car>, but around a specified point on the map. Enter Map scroll (press the **JOYSTICK** left, right, up or down) and scroll to a destination on the map. Press **ENTER** and select <POI around>.

<**Along a street**> - The system searches along a specified street. Select an option using the **JOYSTICK** and press **ENTER**.

Destination by a Stored Location

<**Set destination**> (Enter) <**Stored destinations**> (Enter)

A stored location is a destination stored previously, i.e. your home address, an airport, etc. If no destinations are stored this option will not be available.

A list of stored destinations is shown. Use the **JOYSTICK** to move to a stored destination. Press **ENTER** to access the submenu.

<**Add to itinerary**> - Add the stored destination in the itinerary.

<**Information**> - Provides information on the stored destination.

<**Edit**> - Change the name, etc. of the stored destination.

<**Sorting**> - Sort stored destinations by icon or name.

<**Delete Destination**> - Delete a stored destination.

<**Del. all**> - Delete all stored destinations.

Select an option and press **ENTER**.

Last 20 Destinations

<**Set destination**> (Enter) <**Last 20**> (Enter)

Press **ENTER** to see the 20 most recently entered destinations. Move to the desired destination using the **JOYSTICK** and press right or **ENTER** to access the submenu.

<**Add to itinerary**> - Adds the destination to the itinerary.

<**Information**> - Provides information on the destination.

<**Delete Location**> - Deletes the entered destination.

Return Trip

<Set destination> (Enter) **<Return trip>** (Enter)

Press **ENTER** to obtain guidance back to the starting point.

Select **<Start guidance>** and press **ENTER**.

The system then starts guiding back to the destination Start guidance was last selected.

Destination from a Point on the Map

<Set Destination> (Enter) **<Point on map>** (Enter)

The centre of the cross shows the current destination on the map. The name and destination that correspond to the cross position are shown at the bottom of the map.

Use the **JOYSTICK** to move the cross to the desired destination and press **ENTER** to access the Scroll menu. Move to **<Set as destination>** and press **ENTER**.

Destination by Coordinates

<Set Destination> (Enter) **<Latitude / longitude>**

Using the **JOYSTICK** move from row to row and up or down to set coordinates.

<OK> - Shows the destination of the specified coordinates on the map. Press **ENTER** to access the scroll menu. Move to **<Set as destination>** and press **ENTER** to select as a destination. Press **BACK** to return to coordinate input.

<Cancel> - Return to the previous screen.

Store a Destination

Up to 250 destinations can be stored for re-use in different itineraries. An audible signal notifies the driver that a stored location is approaching and that further information can be linked with the stored location.

Saving a Location from the Itinerary

<Itinerary> (Enter)

Using the **JOYSTICK** move up or down the itinerary to the destination you want to store and press **ENTER** to access the submenu. Select **<Store>** and press **ENTER**.

Select the symbol to be shown in the map and press **ENTER**. Enter the required name. Scroll to **<Store>** and press **ENTER**.



Saving a Location from the Map

Press the **JOYSTICK** in any direction to enter Map scroll. Move to the destination you want to store and press **ENTER**. Select <Store> from the Scroll menu and press **ENTER**.

Move to the symbols. Select and press **ENTER**. Enter the required name. Scroll to <Store> and press **ENTER**.

Adjust the Location

Select <Edit> (Enter) <Adjust> (Enter) to move the position of the stored location on the map.

Use the **JOYSTICK** to move the cross (on the map) to the new position of the stored location and press **ENTER**. Select <Store location> (Enter) <Store> (Enter) to save the change. Press **BACK** to return to the Main screen.

Add Information

<Set Destination> (Enter) <Stored locations> (Enter)

Move to the stored location in the list and press **ENTER**. Select <Add info.> and press **ENTER** to add further information on a stored location to the list provided.

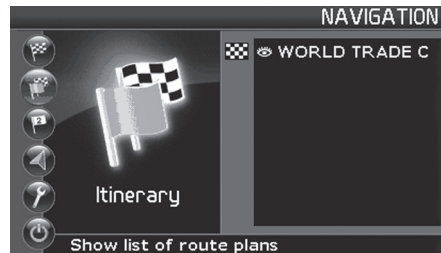
Select <Store> and press **ENTER** to save the change(s). Press **BACK** repeatedly to return to the Main screen.



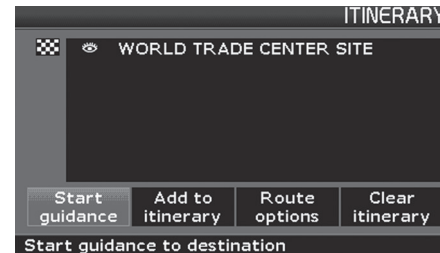
Press **BACK** to erase the original name and replace it with a new one.

Itinerary

The Itinerary menu is available once a destination has been entered. An itinerary with several intermediate destinations can be created to avoid entering destination after destination during your trip. One final destination with up to six intermediate destinations can be specified in an itinerary.

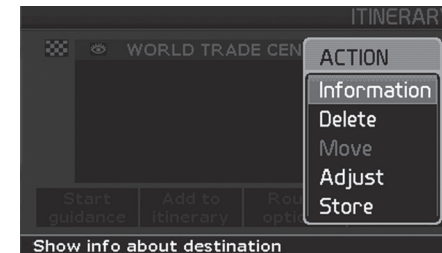


<Itinerary> (Enter)



- <Start guidance>** - Starts guidance to the destination.
- <Add to itinerary>** - Add another destination using the **<Set destination>** screen.
- <Route options>** - Settings for route priorities.
- <Clear itinerary>** - Erase the entire itinerary.

Edit an Itinerary

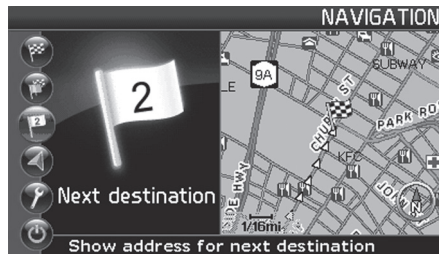


- Select a destination in the itinerary and press **ENTER** to access options.
- <Information>** - Provides information on the destination.
 - <Delete>** - Clears the destination from the itinerary.

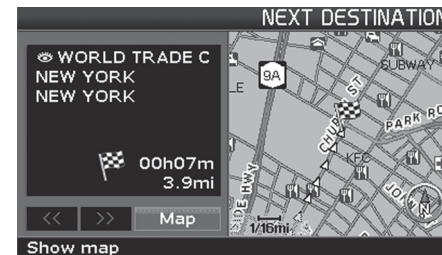
<**Move**> - Changes the position of the destination in the itinerary.
 <**Adjust**> - Changes the destination of the destination on the map.
 <**Store**> - Saves the destination under <Stored Destinations>.
 Select an option and press **ENTER**.

Next Destination

<**Next destination**> (Enter)



Next Destination shows information on the next destination in the itinerary such as name, remaining journey time and distance from the current position to the destination.



Press the << or >> buttons to view more destinations (if available).

Move to <Map> and press **ENTER** to view the whole map image and obtain Map scroll. Press **ENTER** again to obtain the Map scroll menu (Refer to 'Map Scroll', page 10.32).

Avoid Specific Areas

Specify an Area on the Map

<Settings> (Enter) **<Route options>** (Enter) **<Avoid specified areas>**

Press the **JOYSTICK** right, move to **<Selected>** and press the **JOYSTICK** right. Select **<Map>**.

Using the **JOYSTICK**, move the centre point of the hairline cross to the centre of the area to be avoided. The name of the destination the centre point rests on is shown at the bottom of the map.

The rectangle shows the size of the area. Press **ENTER** to obtain the submenu.

Select option in the submenu and press **ENTER**.

<Scale> - Specify the size of the area to be avoided. Move to + or - and press **ENTER** repeatedly to adjust the scale. Press **BACK** to accept.

<Set area to avoid> - Saves specified area. Select **<OK>**.

<Adjust size> - Change the size of the area using the **JOYSTICK**. Press **BACK** to undo the change, or press **ENTER** and select **<Set area to avoid>** to save.

<Adjust area> - Move the area using the **JOYSTICK**. Press **BACK** to undo the move, or press **ENTER** and select **<Set area to avoid>** to save.

Specify an Area Address

<Settings> (Enter) **<Route options>** (Enter) **<Avoid specified areas>**

Press the **JOYSTICK** right, move to **<Selected>** and press the **JOYSTICK** right. Select **<Address>**.

Enter the address of the area to be avoided. The address then constitutes the centre of the area.

Use the **JOYSTICK** to move between the rows and press **ENTER** to enter the address. Once a valid area has been selected, move to **<Set>**, press **ENTER**.

The specified area is shown on the map. Press **ENTER** to obtain the submenu.

Select *<Scale>*, *<Set area to avoid>*, *<Adjust size>* or *<Adjust area>*, refer to Specify an Area on the Map.

<Cancel> - Returns to saved areas.

Select an Area to Avoid

<Settings> (Enter) *<Route options>* (Enter) *<Avoid specified areas>*

Press the **JOYSTICK** right:

<None> - Press **ENTER** to deselect areas already selected.

<Selected> - Press the **JOYSTICK** right to view specified areas. Press **JOYSTICK** right to select or deselect areas already saved.

Avoid Area Options

<Settings> (Enter) *<Route options>* (Enter) *<Avoid specified areas>*

Press the **JOYSTICK** right, move to *<Selected>* and press the **JOYSTICK** right.

Scroll to a specified area or an empty specified area and press **ENTER**. Choose option on the submenu using the **JOYSTICK** and press **ENTER**.

<Map> - Press **ENTER** and use the **JOYSTICK** to select the area to be avoided directly on the map. This will overwrite any current specified area.

<Address> - Enter the address of the area to be avoided. The address constitutes the centre of the area. This will overwrite any current specified area.

<Edit> - Change the name of the saved area. Press **BACK** to delete the current area name. Enter a new name and select *<Set>* to accept or *<Cancel>*.

<Delete> - Delete a saved area. Confirm with *<OK>*.

Information

The address, coordinates and in some cases the telephone number of a POI is can be viewed when ever *<Information>* is available.

<Map> - Press **ENTER** to see the facility destination on the map.

<2nd Fac> - Shows related Points of Interest in the area around the first facility.

<Call> - If the information screen contains a valid phone number press **<Call>** to call that number. The call will be place through the vehicle Hands-Free system.

Current Position

<Current position> (Enter)

The map image shows the vehicle's position and information on the destination, for example name and coordinates. **<GPS>** shows the number of satellites the system is in contact with, on the left side of the **SCREEN**.



Quick Menus

When in Map mode press **ENTER** to access the Quick menus. Use the **JOYSTICK** to scroll through the menus.



[1] MAP SCALE- Move to **< + >** or **< - >** then press **ENTER** repeatedly to zoom in or out of the map. Scale is shown at the bottom of the **SCREEN**.

Select the 'green flag + finish flag' option to view the complete route. Select the 'vehicle + finish flag' option to view the remaining route from the current position to the destination.

If two map images are shown the **MAP SCALE** symbol shows both ends of the Quick menu.

[2] GUIDANCE- Press **ENTER** to repeat a voice guidance.

[3] MAP AND ROUTE OUTLINE - (Advanced mode only)

<Route Outline> - The destination and remaining distance are shown at the top of the **SCREEN**. The next guidance point is highlighted and is followed by a list of remaining guidance points. In addition the distance between guidance points and a type of manoeuvre arrow are shown.

Guidance points are deleted as they are passed. If a deviation is made from the given route, the system calculates a new one.

<Map View> - Choose between one or two maps. Select **<One map>** or **<Two maps>** view. Different degrees of magnification can be selected for each map image of the same area.

[4] DETOUR- (Advanced Mode Only)

When the detour function is used, the system calculates an alternate route to avoid part of the calculated route. This is used to avoid construction, for example. Move to the Detour Quick menu using the **JOYSTICK**.

Set the number of miles the route is to be avoided using the **JOYSTICK** and press **ENTER**. The system then calculates a new route and avoids the original route for the specified number of miles starting from the current position. A destination must be specified for the function to work.

<Avoid Specific Street> - Select **<Avoid>** and press **ENTER**. A list of streets that are part of the route are shown. Move to the street to be avoided using the **JOYSTICK** and press **ENTER**.

[5] POINTS OF INTEREST- (Advanced Mode Only)

Search for Points of Interest which are easily accessible from the Highway. Select from **<Around the car>**, **<Along the route>** or **<Along HWY>**. When a calculated route extends over more than one Highway, the system only searches along the current section of Highway.

If no route is calculated, the system searches along the Highway the vehicle is travelling on. The list shows rest areas, petrol stations and restaurants along the Highway along with the distance. Select a facility using the **JOYSTICK**.

Map View

The **DISPLAY** can show either one or two maps. In two map view each map view can have different viewing scales. Select one or two maps using the  Quick menu.

One Map Settings

Move to <Settings> (Enter) <Map options> (Enter) <Map view>. Press the **JOYSTICK** right or left to select from <2D North>, <2D Heading> or <3D>.



2D - from directly above). 3D - obliquely from above.

When viewing the map in 3D the map elevation is adjustable.

To change the map elevation move to <Settings> (Enter) <Map options> (Enter) <Map view> (Enter).

If not already selected select 3D and press **ENTER**. An elevation adjustment window will show in the bottom left corner of the **DISPLAY**. Use the **JOYSTICK** to move up or down to change the map elevation, press **ENTER** to select. Press **BACK** repeatedly to return to map view.

Two Map Settings

Right Map

Move to <Settings> (Enter) <Map options> (Enter) <Right map view>. Press the **JOYSTICK** right or left to select from <2D North>, <2D Heading> or <3D>.

In 3D map view the direction of travel is always upwards on the screen. Map elevation can be adjusted as described for One Map Settings.

In 2D map view select whether the direction of travel or North is to be upwards on the screen.

Left Map

Move to <Settings> (Enter) <Map options> (Enter) <Left map view>. Press the **JOYSTICK** right or left to select from <2D North> or <2D Heading>.

Map Scroll



While in Map view move the **JOYSTICK** in any direction to start Map scroll.

The **JOYSTICK** can then be used to move the cross freely over a large area with a detailed scale.

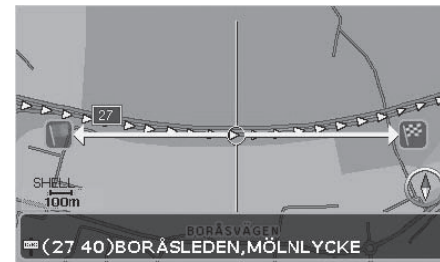
 If using Map scroll in while in 3D view the view will default to 2D.

The destination that corresponds to the cross position is shown at the bottom of the map.

Follow Route

To follow the current route on the map move the centre of the cross to rest over the route. Once the cross rests over the route either the horizontal or vertical cross line will show thicker. If the thicker line is vertical press and hold the **JOYSTICK** left or right, if the thicker line is horizontal press and hold the **JOYSTICK** up or down. While the **JOYSTICK** pressed the cross will follow the intended route.

Flag symbols show whether the line points towards the start of the route or towards the destination.

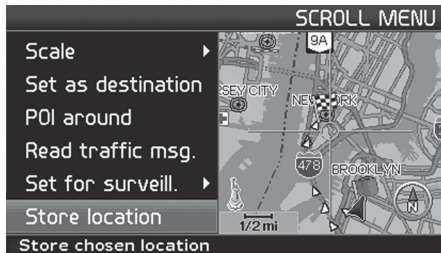


Scroll Menu

Press **ENTER** to access the Scroll menu.

<Scale> - Function to temporarily change the map scale. Press **BACK** to return to the original scale and to return to the vehicle's position on the map.

<Set as destination> - Select a location on the map as a destination or intermediate destination (Refer to 'Destination from a Point on the Map', page 10.23).



Advanced Mode Only

<POI around> - The system searches for Points of Interest (POI) around a specific point on the map. The system searches in a circle with a radius of 1.5 mile (2 km). If less than 40 Points of Interest are found, the search is extended to a radius of maximum 155 mile (250 km).

<Store location> - Save a location on the map. Select an option using the **JOYSTICK** and press **ENTER**.

Map symbols



Aston Martin Dealer



Airport



Automobile club



Amusement park



ATM



Bank



Beach



Bowling



Bus station



Cafe



Company



Casino



City centre



City hall, Civic, Court house



Convention / Exhibition centre



Compressed natural gas



Concert hall



Dry cleaning



Doctor



Ferry terminal



Embassy



Fire brigade



Gas station



Golf course



Government office



Historical monument



Hospital



Hotel



Ice skating



Library



Liquid petroleum gas



Lookout



Marina



Movie theatre



Museum



Night life / Music club



Park & ride



Parking garage



Parking lot



Pharmacy



Place of worship



Police station



Post office



Public support airport



Recreation area



Rest area



Restaurant



Shopping centre / Groceries



Ski resort



Sports complex



Swimming pool



Theatre / Opera



Toll booth₁



Tourist attraction



Tourist information

₁. Cannot be selected as a destination.



Train station



University / College, School



Unincorporated community



Winery



Vehicle repair facility



Vehicle rental



Zoo

Frequently Asked Questions

(Q) The position of the vehicle on the map is wrong.

(A) The GPS system shows the position of the vehicle with an accuracy of about 65 ft (20 m). There is a greater chance of error when driving on roads lying parallel to another road, winding roads, roads on several levels and after driving a long distance without making any distinctive turns. High mountains, buildings, tunnels, viaducts, over or underpasses etc. also have a negative affect on the reception of GPS signals, which means that accuracy in calculating the position of the vehicle may decrease.

(Q) The Navigation system does not always calculate the fastest or shortest route.

(A) When calculating a route, distance, width of road, type of road, number of right or left turns, roundabouts etc. are all taken into account in order to produce the best theoretical route. A more efficient selection of route may be possible based on experience and knowledge of the area.

(Q) The Navigation system uses toll roads, Highways and Ferries even though I chose to avoid them.

(A) When calculating routes over longer distances, for technical reasons, the system can only use larger roads when calculating a route extending over a long distance. If <NO> is selected for toll roads and Highways, they are avoided to the greatest possible extent and are only used if there is no other reasonable alternative.

(Q) The position of the vehicle on the map is incorrect after transportation.

(A) If the vehicle is transported, for example by ferry or train, or in such a way as to impede the reception of GPS signals, it can take up to five minutes before the position of the vehicle is correctly calculated.

(Q) The position of the vehicle on the map is incorrect after the vehicle battery has been disconnected.

(A) If power has been cut from the GPS antenna, it can take more than five minutes for the GPS signals to be received correctly and the position of the vehicle to be calculated.

(Q) The map image does not correspond with the real situation.

(A) Factors such as the constant expansion and rebuilding of the road network, new traffic regulations constantly being introduced etc. means that the digital map database is not always complete. The information stored in the maps is constantly being developed and updated. An Aston Martin Dealer can provide further information.

(Q) The scale of the map sometimes changes.

(A) Scale is affected by vehicle speed. At speeds over 87 mph (140 km/h) the largest possible degree of magnification is 820 ft (250 m). Once speed decreases to 74.5 mph (120km/h), the system is once again able to show all degrees of magnification. If no detailed map information is available, the degree of magnification automatically selected regardless of speed.

(Q) The expected menu option is missing.

(A) Look at the settings that have been made. Select *<Reset to default>* to restore the original settings.

(Q) The system shows the route I am already on when I request *Calculate new route or Detour*.

(A) The system cannot find a good alternative to the current route.

(Q) The vehicle symbol on screen jumps forwards or spins.

(A) The Navigation system may need a few seconds to sense the position and movement of the vehicle before driving off. Set both the Navigation system and the engine to OFF. Start again, but stay stationary for a while before starting to drive.

(Q) I'm going to make a long journey but i do not want to specify a special destination to the Cities I am thinking of travelling through. How do I most easily create an itinerary?

(A) Specify the destination directly on the map using the hairline cross. The system automatically guides you to the final destination even though you are driving beside the intermediate destinations.



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN

Maintenance

Contents

Introduction	11.2	Tire Sidewall Information	11.17	Fuses.....	11.34
Vehicle Jacking.....	11.3	Vehicle Loading	11.19	Headlamp Bulbs.....	11.39
Servicing Precautions.....	11.4	Safety Practices	11.22	Other External Bulbs	11.40
Dangerous Substances.....	11.5	Tire Terminology.....	11.23	Headlamp Alignment	11.41
Emergency Items	11.6	Winter Wheels and Tires.....	11.24	Internal Bulbs	11.43
Owner Maintenance	11.6	Tire Sealant Kit.....	11.24	Other Internal Bulbs.....	11.44
Opening and Closing the Hood.....	11.7	Transporting and Towing.....	11.26	Door Window Reset.....	11.44
Fluid Levels.....	11.9	Vehicle Battery.....	11.27	Bodywork	11.45
Windshield Blade Replacement.....	11.12	Vehicle Battery Charge	11.29	Vehicle Cleaning	11.45
Brake Pad ‘Bedding-in’.....	11.13	Battery Protection Mode	11.31	Vehicle Storage	11.49
Wheels and Tires	11.13	Electrical Start From Another Vehicle.....	11.33		
US Department of Transportation.....	11.15				

Introduction

Each item in the Service Schedules must be performed on time as failure to do so may void the New Vehicle Warranty or other warranties. It is the owner's responsibility to see that the vehicle is maintained properly and in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedules.

Due to the sophistication of the various systems and the specialized equipment required to maintain this vehicle, owner maintenance should be restricted to the routine procedures described in this Owner's Guide. If you think that this vehicle is not functioning properly, please return it to an Aston Martin Dealer to be checked professionally.

Restraint Systems

Aston Martin recommend that the inflatable (airbags) restraint systems and seat belt components installed to this vehicle are replaced at 10 (ten) year intervals from the date of manufacture on the certification label.

Electronic Fuel Injection

 **Warning: Any modifications or additions to the fuel system not specifically designed by Aston Martin are prohibited. If carried out, they may cause damage to the fuel system which in some circumstances could result in fire. All Service Action Campaigns must be undertaken by an Aston Martin Dealer.**

 **Warning: If the fuel system is allowed to run dry irreparable damage to the fuel pumps may occur.**

The electronic fuel injection system requires special equipment and test facilities to set up and maintain so that the vehicle gives maximum performance coupled with economy, reliability and safe vehicle emissions. You are, therefore, strongly advised to entrust all service work to an Aston Martin Dealer.

Parts and Lubricants

When undertaking a servicing task only parts, materials, lubricants, etc. that are specifically recommended by Aston Martin should be used. Failure to do so can result in damage to your vehicle and may invalidate your New Vehicle Warranty or other warranties (Refer to 'Warranty', page C.1).

! *This vehicle's warranty may be invalidated if damage is caused by the use of improper engine oil. Low quality or obsolete oils do NOT provide the protection required by modern, high performance engines. Failure to use engine oil that meets the required specification (Refer to 'Interior Dimensions', page 12.10) could cause excessive engine wear, a build up of sludge and deposits, and increased pollution. It could also lead to engine failure.*

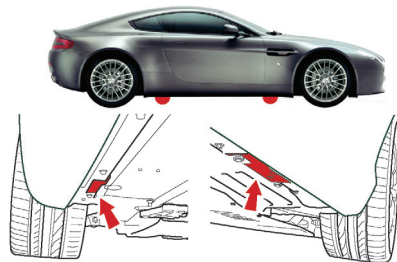
Emission Warranty

The emission control systems installed to vehicles for certain markets are covered by a separate warranty. A statement of the provisions is given in the Warranty section of this Owner's Guide. **You are advised to familiarize yourself with all warranty conditions at the earliest opportunity after taking delivery of your vehicle.**

Vehicle Jacking

If this vehicle is to be raised using a vehicle jack make sure that the following jacking points are used¹.

! *Do not raise the vehicle by placing a vehicle jack under the suspension arms.*



! *Warning: Make sure that no persons are in the vehicle before jacking commences.*

! *Warning: Make sure that the parking brake is set and that the vehicle is in 1st Gear.*

! *Warning: Make sure that the vehicle is parked on firm and level ground to give a secure base for the jack.*

¹ Coupe Shown. The jacking points are the same on the Roadster.

Servicing Precautions

To avoid personal injury, the following safety precautions must be observed when the hood is open and the engine is running or the ignition is ON.

 **Warning** Protect yourself against dangerous substances (Refer to 'Dangerous Substances', page 11.5).

 **Warning:** Keep hands, hair, tools, items of clothing and jewelry clear of all drive belts, pulleys and operating mechanisms. The cooling fans may operate even though the engine is not running.

 **Warning:** Do not breathe exhaust fumes. Exhaust fumes contain carbon monoxide. Carbon monoxide is a dangerous gas, which is colorless and odorless and can cause unconsciousness and may be fatal. Never start or leave the engine running in an enclosed, unventilated area.

 **Warning:** Avoid skin contact with all exhaust system and engine components, engine fluids and escaping steam. They may be hot and will burn you.

 **Warning:** Do not work beneath the vehicle with a vehicle lifting jack as the only support. Place suitable stands under the vehicle.

 **Warning:** Keep children and pets clear of the vehicle. Do not allow anyone inside the vehicle unless specifically working to your instructions.

 **Warning:** Whenever possible work in the engine compartment with the engine cool, the ignition set to off and the vehicle battery disconnected.

 **Warning:** Petrol is highly flammable and, in confined spaces, is also explosive and toxic. In the event of spillage, set the engine to OFF, use no naked flame or light. Do not smoke. Do not inhale fumes.

Dangerous Substances

⚠ Warning: *Dangerous substances should be kept out of reach of children.*

⚠ Warning: *Many liquids and other substances used in motor vehicles are poisonous and should under no circumstances be consumed and should, so far as possible, be kept from contact with the skin. These substances include battery electrolyte, antifreeze, oil, brake and clutch fluid, petrol, windshield washer additives, lubricants, refrigerant and various adhesives.*

⚠ Warning: *Particular care should be taken to avoid unnecessary contact with used engine oil. Always read carefully the instructions printed on labels or stamped on components and follow them carefully. Such instructions are included for reasons of your health and personal safety. Never disregard them.*

Engine Oils

⚠ Warning: *Prolonged and repeated contact with used engine oils can cause serious skin disorders, including dermatitis and cancer. Avoid excessive contact, wash thoroughly after contact. Keep out of reach of children. When your oil is changed, be sure that it is done by an experienced person. In addition, observe all laws regarding the disposal of waste oil and toxic fluids.*

Protect The Environment

⚠ Warning: *It is illegal to pollute drains, water courses, or soil. Use authorized waste disposal facilities, including civic amenity sites and garages providing facilities for receipt of used oil. If in doubt, contact your local authority for advice.*



ASTON MARTIN

Emergency Items

[1] TYRE SEALANT KIT- (not shown) Located in the boot right side wall compartment (Refer to 'Tire Sealant Kit', page 11.24).

[2] FIRST AID KIT₁- Located in the rear left stowage compartment.

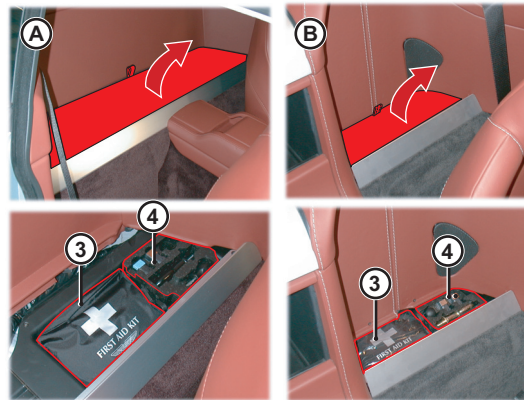
[3] TOOL KIT- Located in the rear left stowage compartment and consists of:

Towing Eye - (Refer to 'Transporting and Towing', page 11.26).

Screwdriver - For general use.

Road Wheel Lock Nut Socket₁ - For the removal of a road wheel(s) when servicing or maintenance is required.

Bulbs - Main Beam.



[A] - Coupe

[B] - Roadster

Owner Maintenance

In the interests of safety and reliability, it is advisable to carry out the following checks at the intervals suggested (more frequently if your vehicle is heavily used or operating in adverse conditions), and always before starting on a long journey. Refer to the following pages for advice and check procedures.

Before Use Check:

- Operation of lamps, horn, indicators, wipers, washers and warning symbols
- Check there is sufficient fuel for the intended journey, particularly at night and before entering highways
- Operation of the seat belts
- Operation of the brakes
- Check for fluid deposits underneath the vehicle

₁ If installed on your vehicle

Weekly Checks

(daily if covering high mileage or touring)

- Tires
- Coolant level
- Brake fluid level
- Power steering level
- Operate Air Conditioning
- Windshield washer fluid level
- Check operation of windshield washers

Engine Oil Level

! *It is important to check the engine oil level regularly. Running the engine with engine oil below the lower mark or above the upper mark can cause serious engine damage.*

Check the engine oil level every fourth fuel tank fill or weekly - whichever is the sooner.

Battery Conditioner

(if installed on your vehicle)

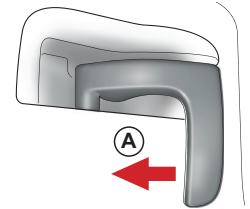
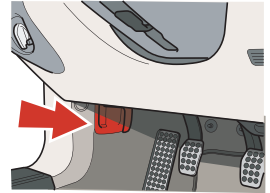
A battery conditioner is located in the boot (Refer to 'Battery Conditioner', page 11.29).

Opening and Closing the Hood

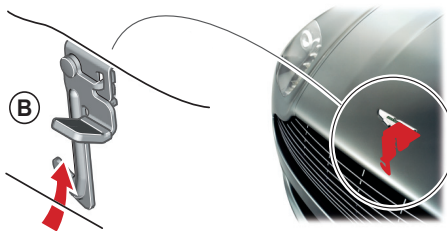
Opening

! *Take care not unintentionally to pull on or catch the hood release lever.*

Pull lever (A) to release the hood latch. The hood will rise but stay secured by the hood secondary catch.



Lift slightly on the hood front edge whilst pulling upward on the hood safety catch (B) to release it. Lift the hood until fully open. The hood is held open by two gas struts.



 If the windshield wipers are operating, they will temporarily rest in the park position while the hood is unlatched.

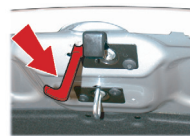
Closing

 **Warning:** Do not pull on the hood secondary catch to assist in closing the hood. This may displace the hood secondary catch. If the catch is displaced it may not work correctly.

 **Hard pressure on a hood that has not closed correctly may damage the hood.**

Lower the hood until it starts to fall under its own weight. At that point let the hood fall to close.

If the hood does not shut, open the hood again and repeat the closure procedure, this time assist using light hand pressure as the hood falls.

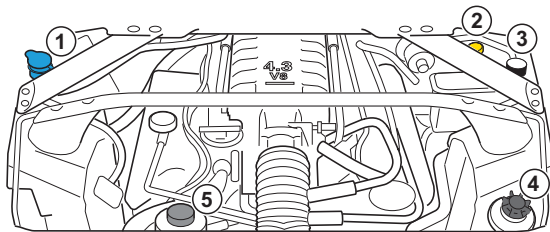


 If the hood does not fully close or it opens during driving the warning message 'Hood not fully closed' will appear in the message centre (right) and an audible warning will sound.

 Before closing the hood, remove any tools, cleaning cloths, etc. from the engine compartment. Make sure that no one is obstructing the 'closing' area and that hands, clothing etc. are clear.

Fluid Levels

⚠ Warning: Engine components may be hot and could cause severe burns.



- [1] - Washer Fluid Reservoir.
- [2] - Brake Fluid Reservoir.
- [3] - Engine Coolant Reservoir.
- [4] - Power Steering Fluid Reservoir.
- [5] - Engine Oil Filler Cap and Dipstick.

Windshield Wash Fluid Level

Top up as required. In winter, to prevent the windshield wash fluid freezing, increase the fluid concentration (refer to the manufacturers recommendations on the windshield wash fluid container).

When the level of screen wash fluid is low an information message will show in the message centre (right) and the amber warning symbol will come ON.



State or local regulations may restrict the use of volatile organic compounds (VOCs), which are commonly used as antifreeze agents in windshield washer fluid. A windshield washer fluid with limited VOC content should be used only if it provides adequate freeze resistance for all regions and climates in which the vehicle will be operated.

Windshield Washer Jets

Washer jet housings are located on the rear edge of the hood. Each housing contains two washer jets.

Windshield washer jets are set during manufacture and should not need adjustment. However, if adjustment is required, adjust up or down so that the fluid strikes between a third and half way up the windshield.

Brake Fluid Level

⚠ Warning: Do not drive the vehicle if the brake fluid level is below the minimum mark.

⚠ Make sure that the brake fluid does not contact the paint work during the topping-up operation. Serious paint work damage can result. If a spillage does occur, immediately flush any brake fluid from the paint work with clean, fresh water and then wipe with a clean damp cloth.

Wipe the reservoir cap clean before removing to prevent ingress of contaminants.

The brake fluid level should read between the Min. and Max. marks.



1. Remove the reservoir cap. Top up to the Max. level.
2. Install the reservoir cap securely.

Engine Coolant Level Check

⚠ Warning: Do not remove the filler cap until the coolant system has cooled. Scalding can be caused by escaping steam or coolant.

 Use a cloth or glove to protect hands and protect face and arms adequately.

1. Remove the pressure cap to check the coolant level. The correct coolant level is to the top of the reservoir tank. Top up with the correct antifreeze mix (Refer to 'Interior Dimensions', page 12.10), if required.



2. Make sure that the filler cap is secure after topping up.

⚠ Do not over tighten.

If required to remove the pressure cap before the engine is cold, **use gloves or a protective cloth** and slowly loosen the pressure cap. Allow residual pressure to slowly drop. Continue to turn the pressure cap until it is released.

Power Steering Fluid Level

⚠ Make sure that the power steering fluid does not contact the paint work during topping up. Serious paint work damage can result. If a spillage does occur, immediately flush any power steering fluid from the paint work with clean fresh water, then wipe with a clean damp cloth.

Always check the reservoir level when the engine is cold and with the front road wheels in the straight ahead position.

Wipe the reservoir cap clean before removing to prevent an ingress of contaminants.



1. Remove the reservoir cap and wipe the dipstick clean with a lint free cloth. Replace and remove again. The fluid level should read between the Min. and Max. marks.
2. If required, top-up fluid level. **Do not overfill.**

Engine Oil Level

 **Warning:** Engine components may be hot and could cause severe burns.

 **Running the engine with engine oil below the lower mark or above the upper mark can cause serious engine damage.**

 **Make sure that there is oil in the reservoir before the engine is started. Look for a sign of engine oil on the dipstick. Running the engine with no engine oil in the reservoir can cause serious engine damage.**

The vehicle should be on level ground.

Before starting the engine to check the oil level, remove the oil reservoir cap and wipe the dipstick clean with a lint free cloth. Replace the cap fully tighten and then remove. Check that there is engine oil on the dipstick.

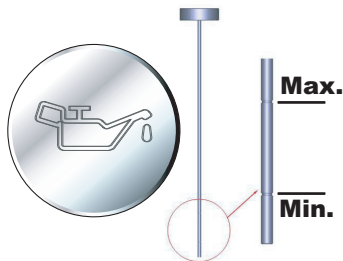
If there is no oil on the dipstick top up the reservoir until oil registers on the dipstick. Replace the cap and fully tighten.

Oil Level Check

 Oil will expand when hot. For an accurate check, check the engine oil level when the engine is cold.

1. Operate the engine at 1500 - 2000 rpm for 20 seconds then set the engine to OFF.
2. Wait 30 seconds then remove the oil reservoir cap and wipe the dipstick clean with a lint free cloth. Replace the cap and fully tighten.

3. Remove the cap again - avoid contact with the sides of the tank. If the level is below Max., top up to the Max. mark with the recommended engine oil.



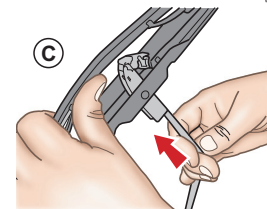
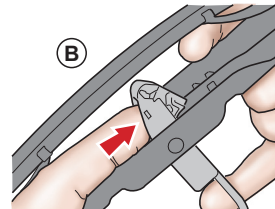
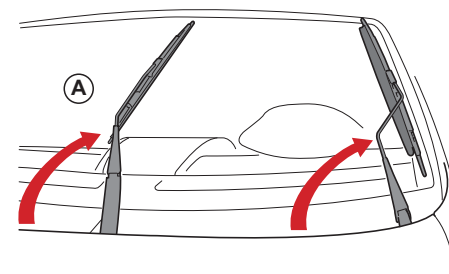
 *Min. to Max. is 4 pts (2 ltr).*

4. Repeat from step 1 to check the level.

Windshield Blade Replacement

To replace the windshield wiper blades the wiper arms must be set at 90° to the vehicle (A).

1. Press and hold in buttons 2 and 6 (Infotainment keypad). Insert the vehicle key in the Ignition Control and move to position 'II' (ignition ON). This will manoeuvre the wiper blade arms to the 90° position. Return the vehicle key to position '0'.
2. Lift the wiper arm(s) up and remove the worn wiper blade(s). Install the new wiper blade(s) and lower the wiper arm(s).
3. After replacing the wiper blade either:
 - Move the vehicle key back through to position 'II' to lower the wiper arms. Return the vehicle key to position '0' or remove
 - Operate the wiper stalk - the wiper arms will complete the request and then park



Brake Pad 'Bedding-in'

 ***Failure to 'bed-in' new brake pads will result in reduced brake performance and possible brake judder or squeal.***

After the installation of new brake pads, brake performance will be reduced, as the brake rotors and pads need to be 'Bedded-in'. For the first few hundred miles of new brake pad use, avoid excessive braking (hard stops from high speed, alpine descents, etc.).

Wheels and Tires

Tires of the correct type, manufacturer and dimensions, with correct cold inflation pressures are an integral part of every vehicle's design. Regular maintenance of tires contributes not only to safety, but to the designed function of the vehicle.

Road holding, steering and braking are especially vulnerable to incorrectly pressurized, badly installed or worn tires.

Tires of the correct size and type, but of different make have widely varying characteristics. Only install tires approved by Aston Martin (Refer to 'Tires', page 12.6).

Tire Pressures

Make sure that the correct tire pressures are carefully maintained (Refer to 'Tires', page 12.6). Road holding, steering, braking and tire wear are especially vulnerable to incorrect tire pressures.

Check tire pressures regularly and before starting any journey. Reinflate any tire with a low pressure at the earliest opportunity.

Pressures increase slightly when the tires are hot. For an accurate reading, pressures should be checked when the tires are cold. After adjusting the tire pressures, make sure that the valve caps are securely replaced to provide an additional air seal and to prevent the ingress of dirt.

Tire Service

 Because of the high performance potential of this vehicle, Aston Martin strongly recommend replacement of any damaged or worn tire.

The recommended tires for this vehicle are asymmetrical and must be installed to the wheel with the tire mark 'Outside' on the outside of the wheel rim.

Sport Tires - The front Sport tires are asymmetrical. The rear sport tires are asymmetrical and directional. When being installed make sure that the 'direction of rotation' arrow (on the tire sidewall) shows the direction of tire rotation is forwards.

They are also of different sizes on the front and rear axles, therefore complete wheels cannot be swapped between axles. Complete wheels can, however, be swapped from side to side on the same axle¹.

Damage

Tires should be examined at regular intervals for wear and damage. Inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage, i.e. bulges in the tread or the sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or the sidewalls. If damage is observed or suspected have the tire inspected by a tire professional.

Stones or other objects which have become lodged in the tire treads should be carefully removed.

Flat Spots

It is a characteristic of high performance tires that temporary 'flat spots' may develop if the vehicle is left standing in high or low ambient temperatures for any length of time.

These 'flat spots will manifest themselves as minor vibrations when the vehicle is first driven from cold. As the tires warm up to operating temperature, normal tire shape should be restored and the vibrations cease. If vibrations persist, consult your Aston Martin Dealer.

Age

Tires degrade over time, even when they are not being used. It is recommended that tires generally be replaced after 6 years of normal service. Heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process.

 State or local regulations on tire life may apply.

¹. Not rear axle Sport tire (option).

US Department of Transportation

New Tires

New tires should not be installed to the front wheels in combination with worn rear tires, as rear end stability will be affected. When new tires are required consult your Aston Martin Dealer for advice if the rear tires are also worn. Each wheel and tire unit must be balanced dynamically to make sure of efficient steering, optimum tire wear and maximum ride comfort. Because of the potentially high speeds, it is essential that wheel balancing is carried out when new tires are installed.

'Running-In' New Tires

When new tires have been installed, speed should be limited, particularly during the first 50 mile (80 km) or so of driving. Fast cornering, hard braking, and harsh acceleration should also be avoided during this period.

Tread Wear Marks

Tread wear marks (A) are incorporated into the construction of all tires. These marks are integral moulded ribs spaced at regular intervals around the circumference of the tire and extend across the full width of the tread, in all primary grooves.

When a tire has worn causing one or more of the marks to be flush with the outer face of the tread the tire has reached its wear limit. It then becomes illegal in certain countries and must be replaced.



Uniform Tire Quality Grades

The following information relates to the tire grading system developed by the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration, which grades tires by tread wear, traction and temperature performance.

All passenger vehicle tires must conform to federal safety requirements in addition to these grades.

Tread Wear

The tread wear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of a tire tested, under controlled conditions, on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and a half times ($1\frac{1}{2}$) as well, on the government course, as a tire graded 100.

The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the normal due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

 **Warning: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.**

Temperature

 **Warning: The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, under inflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.**

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger vehicle tires must meet under the Federal Motor Safety Standard No. 109.

Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

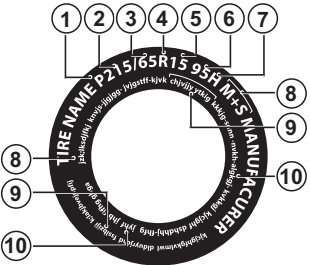
[7] H- Shows the tire's speed rating¹. The speed rating denotes the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time under a standard condition of load and inflation pressure. The tires on your vehicle may operate at different conditions for load and inflation pressure. These speed ratings may need to be adjusted for the difference in conditions. The ratings range from 81 mph (130km/h) to 186 mph (299 km/h). These ratings are listed in the following chart.

 For tires with a maximum speed capability over 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the letters ZR. For those with a maximum speed capability over 186 mph (299 km/h), tire manufacturers always use the letters ZR.

Letter Rating	Speed Rating
M	81 mph (130 km/h)
N	87 mph (140 km/h)
Q	99 mph (159 km/h)
R	106 mph (171 km/h)
S	112 mph (180 km/h)
T	118 mph (190 km/h)
U	124 mph (200 km/h)
H	130 mph (210 km/h)
V	149 mph (240 km/h)
W	168 mph (270 km/h)
Y	186 mph (299 km/h)

[8] M+S OR M/S- Mud and Snow.
or AT - All Terrain.
or AS - All Season.

[9] TIRE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER (TIN)- (Also known as 'DOT Code') The Tire Identification Number (TIN) begins with the letters 'DOT' and shows that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997.



After 2000 the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

[10] TIRE PLY COMPOSITION AND MATERIAL USED- Shows the number of plies or the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire tread and sidewall. Tire manufacturers also must show the ply materials in the tire and the sidewall, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.

[11] MAXIMUM LOAD- Shows the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. Refer to the Safety Compliance Certification Label, which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door, for the correct tire pressure for your vehicle.

[12] TREAD WEAR, TRACTION AND TEMPERATURE GRADES - (Refer to 'US Department of Transportation', page 11.15)

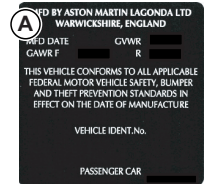
[13] MAXIMUM PERMISSIBLE INFLATION PRESSURE- (Refer to 'Maximum Permissible Inflation Pressure', page 11.21)

Vehicle Loading

Properly loading this vehicle will provide maximum return of vehicle design performance. Before loading this vehicle, familiarize yourself with the following terms for determining the vehicle's weight ratings from the vehicle's Safety Compliance Certification Label.

[A] - USA

[B] - Canada



MFD Date: Month and Year the vehicle was manufactured (e.g. 01 / 06 = January 2006)

GVWR: Gross vehicle weight (curb weight + full payload)

GAWR F: Maximum load on the front axle

GAWR R: Maximum load on the rear axle or the Tire label (C).

TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION

SEATING CAPACITY

TOTAL 2

FRONT 2

REAR 0

The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed 260 kg or 573 lbs.

TYRE

SIZE

COLD TYRE PRESSURE

FRONT

235/40
ZR19

230 kPa (33 PSI)

REAR

275/35
ZR19

250 kPa (36 PSI)

SPARE

NONE

SEE OWNER'S
MANUAL FOR
ADDITIONAL
INFORMATION

6C33-69014-DA

Seating Capacity: Shows the maximum number of occupants.

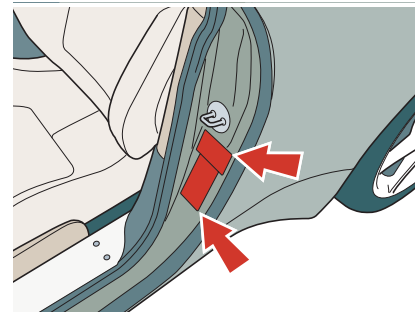
Payload: Make sure that the payload (cargo + occupants) does not exceed this limit ((Refer to 'Payload', page 11.21))

Tire sizes: The size of tires to be used on this vehicle (Refer to 'Tires', page 12.6).

Cold inflation pressure: The maximum recommended tire inflation pressure (Refer to 'Tires', page 12.6).

 The illustrations shown are examples and may not accurately describe the labels on this vehicle.

Both labels are located on the vehicle B pillar.



Payload - The payload is the combined weight of cargo and passengers that the vehicle is carrying. The maximum payload for your vehicle can be found on the Tire Label on the edge of the driver's door. Look for 'The Combined Weight of Occupants and Cargo Should Never Exceed XXX kg OR XXX lb' for maximum payload.

The payload listed on the Tire Label is the maximum payload for the vehicle as built by the assembly plant. If any aftermarket or Aston Martin Dealer installed equipment has been installed on the vehicle, the weight of the equipment must be subtracted from the payload listed on the Tire Label in order to determine the new payload.

Gross Vehicle Weight - the maximum recommended weight for a vehicle, including: the weight of the vehicle itself, fuel and other fluids, passengers, and all cargo.

Determining the Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement 'The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lb' on the vehicle's tire label.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in the vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passenger from XXX kg or XXX lb.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. **For example**, if the 'XXX' amount equals 573 lb and there will be two 150 lb passengers in the vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 273 lb ($573 - 300 (2 \times 150) = 273$ lb). In metric units ($260 - 136 (2 \times 68) = 124$ kg).

5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

Maximum Permissible Inflation Pressure

The maximum permissible inflation pressure is the tire manufacturer's maximum permissible pressure or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.



The recommended cold inflation tire pressures for this vehicle can also be found in the Specifications chapter of this Owner's Guidebook (Refer to 'Tires', page 12.6)

Safety Practices

⚠ Warning: If your vehicle is stuck in snow, mud, sand, etc., do not rapidly spin the tires; spinning the tires can tear the tire and cause an explosion. A tire can explode in as little as three to five seconds.

Do not spin the wheels at over 35 mph (56 km/h). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

Driving habits have a great deal to do with your tire mileage and safety.

- Observe posted speed limits
- Avoid fast starts, stops and turns
- Avoid potholes and objects on the road
- Do not run over curbs or hit the tire against a curb when parking

Highway Hazards

No matter how carefully you drive there's always the possibility that you may eventually have a flat tire on the highway. Drive slowly to the closest safe area out of traffic. This may further damage the flat tire, but your safety is more important.

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed. Drive with caution until you can safely pull off the road. Stop and inspect the tires for damage. If a tire is under-inflated or damaged, deflate it, remove wheel and replace it with your spare tire and wheel.

If you can not detect a cause, have the vehicle towed to the nearest repair facility or tire dealer to have the vehicle inspected.

Tire Terminology

Tire Label - A label showing the OE (Original Equipment) tire sizes, recommended inflation pressure and the maximum weight the vehicle can carry.

Tire Identification Number (TIN) - A number on the sidewall of each tire providing information about the tire brand and manufacturing plant, tire size and date of manufacture. Also referred to as DOT code.

Inflation Pressure - A measure of the amount of air in a tire.

Standard Load - A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a maximum load at 35psi [37psi (2.5bar) for Metric tires]. Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

Extra Load - A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a heavier maximum load at 41psi [43psi (2.9bar) for Metric tires]. Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

kPa - Kilo pascal, a metric unit of air pressure.

PSI - Pounds per square inch, a standard unit of air pressure.

Cold Inflation Pressure - The tire pressure when the vehicle has been stationary and out of direct sun light for an hour or more and prior to the vehicle being driven for 1 mile (1.6km).

Recommended Inflation Pressure - The cold inflation pressure found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label (found on the edge of the driver's door).

Bead Area of the Tire - Area of the tire next to the rim.

Sidewall of the Tire - Area between the bead area and the tread.

Tread Area of the Tire - Area of the perimeter of the tire that contacts the road when mounted on the vehicle.

Rim - The metal support (wheel) for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

Winter Wheels and Tires

The tires installed as original equipment are designed with a rubber compound, tread pattern and width specially suited for high speeds in normal road conditions, but they are less suitable during extremes of low temperatures, snow and ice. The use of winter tires will considerably improve handling during these conditions.

Winter Tires

 **Warning: Maximum speed with winter tires is 150 mph (240 km/h).**

Winter tires must be used in vehicle sets, that is, installed on all four wheels. Four special wheel rims and winter tires (Refer to 'Tires', page 12.6) are required for severe weather driving.

Do not exceed the tire speed rating when using winter tires. Contact your Aston Martin Dealer.



Only use Aston Martin approved winter tires.

Snow (Chains) Spiders

 **Warning: The maximum speed when using snow spiders is 30 mph (48 km/h). Remove the snow spiders immediately the roads are clear of snow.**

These are available from your Aston Martin Dealer for temporary use when driving in heavy snow conditions. Snow spiders should only be installed to the rear (driven) wheels.



Make sure that the installation instructions supplied with the snow spiders are kept in a safe place.

Tire Sealant Kit

 **Warning: Do not use the system to seal a tire that was damaged while driving with insufficient air pressure (e.g. tire cuts, cracks, bumps or similar damage). Do not use the system to seal tires with sidewall damage. Only punctures in the tread area of tires may be sealed.**

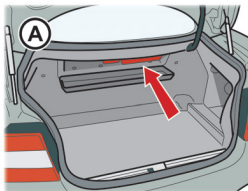
 **Warning: Do not stand directly beside the tire while the compressor is pumping. Watch the sidewall of the tire. If there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage turn OFF the compressor. The journey should not be continued. Contact your nearest Aston Martin Dealer.**

 **Warning: If a tire pressure of 26 psi (1.8 bar) cannot be reached in 7 minutes then the tire can not be sealed. Do not attempt to reinflate the tire. Contact your nearest Aston Martin Dealer.**

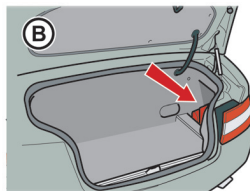
⚠ Warning: *If the pressure in the tire after driving for 2 mile (3 km) is below 19 psi (1.3 bar) the tire has not been effectively sealed. The journey should not be continued. Contact your nearest Aston Martin Dealer.*

⚠ Warning: *After a longer period of rest, the tire pressure should be rechecked.*

Location



[A] - Coupe



[B] - Roadster

Operation

Remove the Tire Sealant Kit from its location in the trunk. Follow the instructions detailed on the lid.

Read the following instructions and warnings carefully before using the Tire Sealant Kit. Compliance with these instructions is vital to make sure of vehicle and user safety. Noncompliance with these instructions means risking severe tire damage and hazardous vehicle which can lead to a road accident involving damage to property or injury to persons.

- Make sure the vehicle is parked far enough from traffic so that there is no danger from passing vehicles and so that you do not disrupt the traffic. Warn other vehicles using the warning triangle
- The system should only be used between temperatures of – 40°F and 158°F (– 40°C and 70°C)

- The system will effectively seal a tire that was punctured by an object with a diameter of up to ¼ in (6 mm). It is possible that a tire, especially with greater damage, will not be sealed. Do not remove objects that punctured the tire if they are still lodged in the tire
- A maximum speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) may not be exceeded at any time after sealing the tire with the system
- The system provides only a **temporary emergency repair** for continuing the journey up to 125 mile (200 km) or to the nearest Aston Martin Dealer
- If the nearest Aston Martin Dealer is over a **125 mile (200 km)** away arrange for collection under the Aston Martin Roadside Assistance scheme

- The sealant bottle needs to be exchanged before it expires. **Do not** use the system after the expiry date on the sealant bottle or casing has been reached. Contact your nearest Aston Martin Dealer
- Do not attempt to inflate other objects without using a system adapter and do not inflate objects with a volume greater than 1.8 ft.³ (50 liter) (air mattresses, rubber boats, etc.). Do not let the system pump air for more than 10 minutes without stopping it and allowing it to cool down

Transporting and Towing

 ***When moving the vehicle by transporter make sure that the vehicle is not strapped down by the suspension control arms.***

 ***Power braking and power steering are not available with the engine OFF. Substantially higher brake pedal pressures and steering effort are required.***

 ***If there is a transmission fault, this vehicle must be transported.***

The recommended method for moving a defective vehicle is to have it transported in a purpose built, covered, vehicle transporter.

The towing eye is only for **emergency use** when moving the vehicle for **short distances**, e.g. If it is causing an obstruction or if it requires winching onto a transporter.

SportShift Transmission Only - If the transmission is in Neutral then first gear will be selected at ignition OFF. If the transmission is in First or Reverse gear, the transmission will stay in the selected gear at ignition OFF. To enable Neutral to be selected at ignition OFF, set the ignition to ON then press and release the Neutral button twice, or pull back and release the gear shift paddles twice, before the ignition is set to OFF. An audible warning will sound three times while the message centre (right) will show 'Gearbox In Neutral' and 'Apply parking brake'.

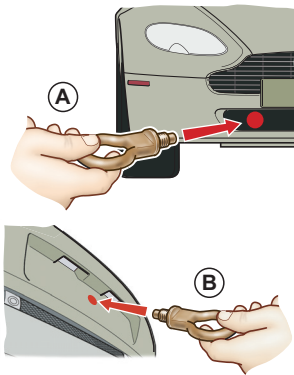
1. Remove the towing eye from its storage location in the vehicle tool kit and install it to the exposed female threads (A) Front, (B) Rear.

 *The towing eye incorporates a left hand thread.*

 *Protect vehicle paint work when installing the towing eye.*

2. Select 'Neutral'. Move the vehicle key to position 'I'.

When being towed use the parking brake or footbrake very gently as required to prevent excessive slack in the tow rope.



Vehicle Battery

⚠ Warning: Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash hands after handling.

⚠ Warning: Do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide proper ventilation.

⚠ Warning: When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury, damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.

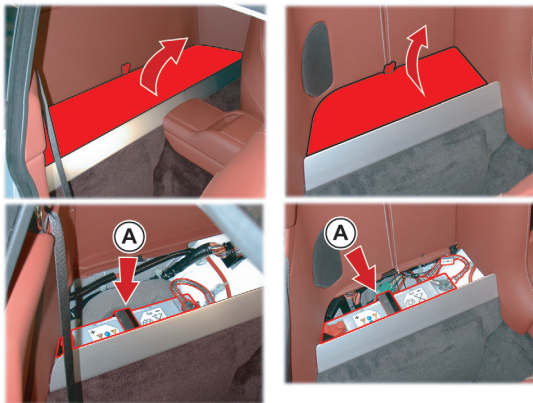
⚠ Warning: Keep batteries out of reach of children.

⚠ Warning: Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

⚠ The engine must never be run with the vehicle battery disconnected.

⚠ Apart from vehicle recovery, this vehicle must not be driven if the vehicle battery is incapable of starting the engine. In this case the vehicle battery must be replaced. Contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

The vehicle battery is maintenance free and should only require checking by your Aston Martin Dealer during regular vehicle services. To access the vehicle battery remove the trim panel (A), located in the right rear environment.



Vehicle Battery Disposal

It is the responsibility of the vehicle owner when disposing of automotive batteries to do it in an environmentally correct manner. The incorrect disposal of a vehicle (lead-acid) battery can be extremely hazardous to health and the environment. Most batteries contain heavy metals and when disposed of incorrectly, these heavy metals may leak into the ground. This can contribute to soil and water pollution and endanger wildlife.

Follow your local authorized standards for disposal. Call your local authorized recycling centre to find out more about recycling automotive batteries.



Do not dispose of your vehicle battery in the household waste.

Warnings

The following warnings are located on the vehicle battery.



⚠ DANGER/POISON			
SHIELD EYES EXPLOSIVE GASES CAN CAUSE BLINDNESS OR INJURY	NO • SPARKS • FLAMES • SMOKING	SULFURIC ACID CAN CAUSE BLINDNESS OR SEVERE BURNS	FLUSH EYES IMMEDIATELY WITH WATER GET MEDICAL HELP FAST
KEEP OUT OF THE REACH OF CHILDREN DO NOT TIP: KEEP VENT CAPS TIGHT AND LEVEL			

Vehicle Battery Charge

Various systems, for example, the clock, security systems and Infotainment centre system continue to drain battery power even with the ignition set to OFF.

A **new fully charged** battery has the ability to start this vehicle, if left unused, for up to 45 days without a battery conditioner being used (Refer to 'Battery Conditioner', page 11.29).

 *In cold climates this time may be reduced.*

 *Aston Martin recommend that if this vehicle is to be left unused for ten (10) days or more a battery condition should be used.*

Battery charge can be drained excessively in a number of ways:

- If the vehicle is unused for long periods of time
- If the vehicle is used regularly but only for short journeys, e.g. less than 30 mile (48 km) a journey
- If electrical systems are in use without the vehicle engine running
- If the vehicle key is left in the Ignition Control for long periods of time without the engine running

Excessive battery drain would ultimately mean that the battery would not be able to start the engine.

Battery Conditioner

(If installed on your vehicle)

 **Warning: Do not attempt to start the vehicle with the battery conditioner connected to the mains supply.**

 **Warning: Do not smoke. Prevent flames and sparks. Explosive gasses are given off by batteries during charging.**

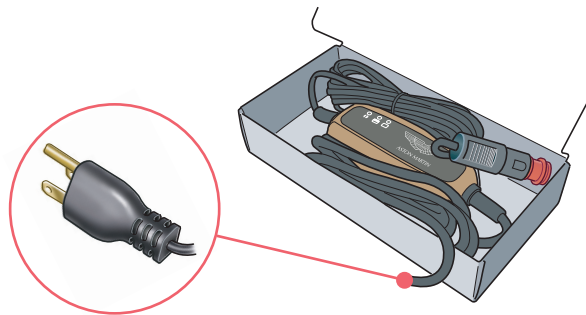
 **The battery conditioner is designed for conditioning of partially or fully charged batteries. It will not effectively charge a discharged battery.**

 **For indoor use only. Disconnect mains supply before making or breaking battery connections.**

 **Do not leave the vehicle key in the trunk. If the trunk lid is closed there will be no access to the contents of the trunk.**

 The battery conditioner supplied with the vehicle is suitable for use on all types of 12 volt lead acid batteries.

If this vehicle is not going to be used for a period of time, and **main power is available**, use a battery conditioner to maintain the battery charge level.

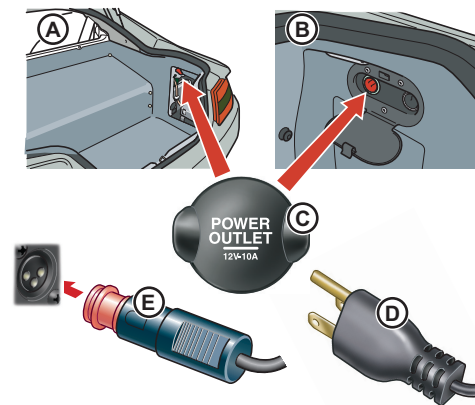


When connected the battery conditioner will maintain a small trickle charge to keep the battery in a fully charged state. The battery conditioner may be left in this state indefinitely.

To Connect the Battery Conditioner

[A] - Coupe

[B] - Roadster



1. Insert the accessory socket plug (E) into the accessory socket (C).
2. Insert the mains plug (D) into the mains supply.

Gently close, but do not latch, the trunk lid. This avoids possible damage to the trunk lid water seal from the battery conditioner power cable.

 With the trunk lid left open the vehicle doors can be locked and armed (Refer to 'Vehicle Locked - Trunk Lid Open', page 2.9).

To remove the battery conditioner first disconnect from the mains supply, then from the vehicle socket.

Battery Protection Mode

 **Replace the battery as soon as possible, if the battery is not capable of starting the engine.**

Using the vehicle electrical systems, i.e. the infotainment system, with the vehicle key at position 'I' (ignition OFF) will drain the battery charge. Eventually the battery will drain to such a low level that it will not start the engine.

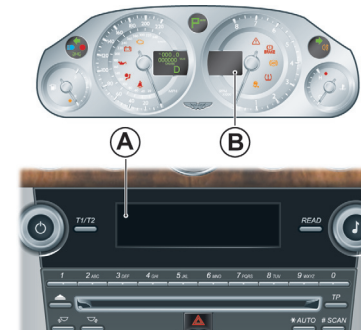
To avoid this happening, a series of safety mechanisms shut down non-essential electrical systems before excessive battery drain takes place.

FAQ

What is the first sign of battery protection mode?

[A] - 'Warning - Low Battery' (For 10 seconds).

[B] - 'Low Battery'.



What should I do next?

Set all unnecessary electrical systems to OFF to reduce battery drain. Start the engine to recharge the battery. Run the engine for a reasonable length of time.

What happens if I ignore the warning messages?

After approximately two to ten minutes (dependent on the rate of battery charge drain) the following messages will show:

[A] - 'Infotainment will be shut down 2 minutes' (For 10 seconds).

[B] - 'Low Battery Power Save'.

If the Audio system is ON the sound will mute for 10 seconds and a short 'Beep' will be heard when the message is first shown.

What should I do if these messages are shown?

Set all unnecessary electrical systems to OFF. Start the engine to recharge the battery. Run the engine for a reasonable length of time.

What happens if I ignore second warning messages?

The infotainment system will shut down in two minutes. No other electrical system will be shut down. This significantly reduces the rate of battery drain. The following functionality will be lost:

- CD Player
- Radio Tuner
- Navigation System

What should I do if the infotainment system shuts down?

Start the engine to recharge the battery. Run the engine for a reasonable length of time.

The infotainment system will not operate without the engine running until the battery has regained its charge.

With the engine running the infotainment system will start up.

What is a reasonable length of time to run the engine?

The vehicle battery normally requires a journey of approximately 30 mile (48 km) to bring the battery to a level where the infotainment system will operate again. Additionally, use the battery conditioner to restore the vehicle battery charge.

What if I cannot restart the engine?

If the battery has been run down to a point where it will not start the engine then an external battery charger will be required or your vehicle will require a 'jump start' (Refer to 'Electrical Start From Another Vehicle', page 11.33).

 ***Replace the battery as soon as possible, if the battery is not capable of starting the engine.***

Electrical Start From Another Vehicle

 **Warning:** *The donor vehicle must have a 12 volt battery and a negative (-), black earth terminal to make sure that the correct battery polarity is maintained.*

 **Apart from vehicle recovery, this vehicle must not be driven if the vehicle battery is incapable of starting the engine. In this case the vehicle battery must be replaced.**

 **If the voltage or earth of the donor vehicle is different or not known, do not attempt starting in the way described.**

If this vehicle will not start due to a discharged battery consult your Aston Martin Dealer. **For vehicle recovery** it may be started by connecting the battery from another vehicle (donor) to this vehicle (recipient).

Contact your Aston Martin Dealer to have the battery checked or replaced.

 **Remove rings, metal watch bands and any other jewelry.**

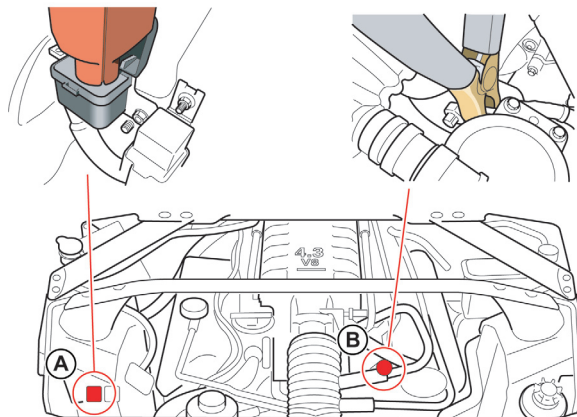
 **Set all electrical motors and ancillaries in both vehicles to OFF.**

 **Set all lamps except those needed to protect vehicles or illuminate the work area to OFF.**

Jump Start Procedure

1. Position the vehicles so that the connecting cables will reach into the recipient engine bay. Apply the parking brake and set the ignition to OFF.
2. Access the jump start terminal in the recipient engine bay.

3. Connect the + ve (red) cable between the '+ve' (red) terminal of the donor battery and the jump start terminal of the recipient vehicle (A).
4. Connect the '-ve' (black) cable between the '-ve' (black) terminal of the donor battery and a good earth (-ve) point in the recipient engine bay (B).
5. Start the donor vehicle engine and run at about 1500 – 2000 rpm.
6. Start the engine of the recipient vehicle.



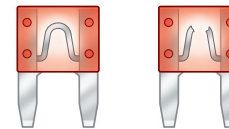
7. Once both vehicles are running remove the jump start cables (first the '- ve' (black) cable from both vehicles and then the '+ve' (red) cable from both vehicles).
Allow the recipient engine to run until the discharged battery is sufficiently recharged (15 to 20 minutes) to start the engine without assistance. Set to OFF and restart the recipient engine. Take the vehicle on a long run to fully charge the battery. Contact your Aston Martin Dealer to have the battery checked or replaced.

 *Recharge time will depend on the initial 'state of health' of discharged battery.*

Fuses

The electrical system is protected by fuses. If any lamps, accessories, or controls don't work, inspect the appropriate circuit protector.

If a fuse has blown, the inside element will be melted. If the same fuse blows again, avoid using that system and consult your Aston Martin Dealer as soon as possible.



Normal

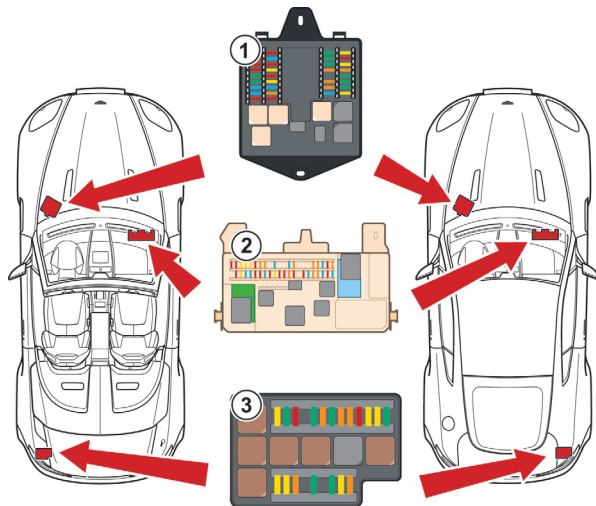
Blown

Fusebox Location

[1] - Engine Bay fuse box (Passenger Side).

[2] - Cabin fuse box (Passenger Footwell).

[3] - Trunk fuse box (right side of trunk (Coupe)) - (left side of trunk (Roadster)).



Engine Bay Fuses

Fuse	Rating	Function
F1	10A	Not Available
F2	10A	Clock
F3	10A	Cooling fan module
F4	20A	Engine management (PCM)
F5	20A	Not Available
F6	15A	Not Available
F7	15A	Not Available
F8	10A	Engine coolant level sensor / Valve electric vapor management (VEM)
F9	20A	Not Available
F10	10A	A/C clutch
F11	15A	Horn

Engine Bay Fuses

Fuse	Rating	Function
F12	10A	Keep alive power (PCM)
F13	20A	Injectors
F14	10A	Exhaust gas recirculation module
F15	25A	Starter motor solenoid
F16	15A	Coils / Suppressors
F17	5A	Glove box release solenoid
F18	15A	Exhaust Gas Oxygen (HEGO) sensors / Catalyst monitor sensor (CMS) / Variable camshaft timing solenoids (VCT)
F19	30A	ABS module / Battery feed
F20	30A	ABS module / Battery feed
F21	30A	Heated front windshield (option)

Engine Bay Fuses		
Fuse	Rating	Function
F22	5A	Mass airflow sensor (left and right side) / Secondary air injection solenoid
F23		Blank
F24	5A	Alternator warning lamp
F25	5A	Not Available
F26	20A	Headlamp wash pump
F27	25A	Not Available
F28	10A	ABS module, Steering angle sensor / Vehicle key reader / Fuel tank leakage diagnostic pump
F29	25A	Not Available
F30	5A	Battery sensing

Engine Bay Fuses		
Fuse	Rating	Function
F31	30A	Heated front windshield (option)
F32	30A	Wiper motor (slow) / Alternator
F33	30A	Wiper motor (fast)
F34	20A	Heater Blower motor
F35	60A	Cooling fan module
Cabin Fuses		
Fuse	Rating	Function
F43	15A	Multi media module display / GPS tuner (option) / Media player
F44	10A	Airbag module
F45	15A	Not Available

Cabin Fuses		
Fuse	Rating	Function
F46	5A	Driver Information / Master lamp switch / Glove box relay / Master lock switch / Trunk lid release / Engine bay fusebox / Bluetooth / CCM Switcher / Convertible Roof module (Roadster) / Occupant classification system module.
F47	5A	Interior lamps (front / footwell) / Seat switches / Glovebox release / Fuel Flap release / Trunk accessory (illumination) socket / Garage door opener
F48	15A	Windshield washer relay and pump

Cabin Fuses		
Fuse	Rating	Function
F49	10A	Airbag module
F51	15A	Diagnostic ports / Centre stack switches
F52	5A	Start button
F53	10A	Not Available
F54	10A	Engine fuse box / Trunk fuse box / Tire pressure sensing / Secondary air induction relay
F55	20A	Cabin accessory socket (Cigar lighter)
F56	10A	Centre console module / Sounder module / Hazard switch
F57	15A	Diagnostic ports / Brake pedal switch

Cabin Fuses		
Fuse	Rating	Function
F58	10A	Headlamp (right side) / Headlamp (main beam) level module
F59	10A	Headlamp (left side)
F60	15A	Drivers seat
F61	15A	Passenger seat
F62	20A	A/C module
F63	20A	Not Available
F64	5A	AM / FM receiver module
F65	5A	Media player / Multi media module and display / Antenna amplifiers / Audio amplifier

Cabin Fuses		
Fuse	Rating	Function
F66	10A	Centre console module / Infotainment control module
F67	15A	Not Available
F68	5A	Bluetooth module
F69	5A	Not Available
F73	5A	Not Available
F74	15A	Fuel pump
F77	15A	Trunk power socket
F79	5A	Reversing lamps / Parking Assist module /Garage door opener / Reverse switch (SportShift)

Cabin Fuses		
Fuse	Rating	Function
F80	5A	Not Available
F81	20A	Ignition switch
F82	25A	Passenger door module
F83	25A	Driver door module
F84	25A	Passenger seat power and switches
F85	25A	Driver seat power and switches
F86	5A	Start button, Driver and passenger seats / Engine fusebox

Trunk Fuses		
Fuse	Rating	Function
F1	5A	Tonneau lid latch (Roadster)
F2	20A	Cubby box accessory socket (Roadster)
F3	30A	Heated rear windshield
F4	20A	Not Available
F5	30A	Audio amplifier
F6	20A	Not Available
F7	5A	Not Available
F8	30A	SportShift Transmission - Hydraulic pump
F9	30A	Fuel pump module
F10	30A	Convertible Roof module (Roadster)
F11	20A	Tonneau lid module (Roadster)

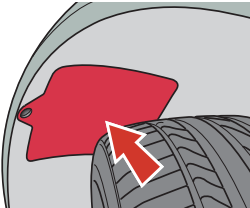
Trunk Fuses		
Fuse	Rating	Function
F12	20A	SportShift Transmission module
F13	10A	SportShift Transmission module
F14	5A	Parking assist module
F15	5A	Not Available
F16	30A	Convertible Roof pump (Roadster)
F17	5A	Trunk lamps
F18	30A	Audio amplifier
F20	20A	Tonneau lid module (Roadster)
F21	30A	Not Available
F22	20A	Exhaust bypass valve and vacuum pump

Headlamp Bulbs

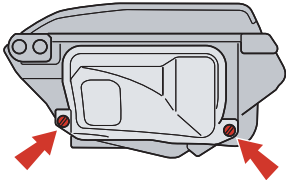
 *Headlamp Units: Condensation: The headlamp units will generate condensation under certain conditions. However, this should clear after approximately 10 minutes.*

Access

Access to the headlamp bulbs is through a panel in each wheel arch liner. Turn the steering to the opposite lock from the headlamp unit with the defective bulb. Using a flat blade, i.e. a screwdriver or a small coin, release the screw on the access panel and remove the panel.

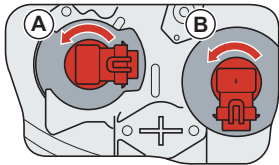


Using a screwdriver release the two knurled screws and remove the headlamp unit cover.



[A] - Dipped beam
[B] - Main beam

 *The main beam bulb (B) is inboard on both the left and right headlamp units)*



 **Warning:** Handle a halogen headlamp bulb carefully and keep out of children's reach. Grasp the bulb by only its plastic base and do not touch the glass. The oil from your hand could cause the bulb to break the next time the headlamps are operated.

Specification:

	Main Beam	Dipped Beam
Rating	12V 65W	12V 55W
Type	H9	H11

 *A spare Main Beam bulb is part of the vehicle tool kit. If used, replace the spare Main Beam bulb at the earliest opportunity.*

1. Remove the access cover.
2. Turn the bulb unit a quarter turn counterclockwise. Withdraw the unit and disconnect the wiring harness plug.
3. Connect a new bulb unit, insert the bulb unit and turn a quarter turn clockwise to lock. Install the headlamp access cover and wheel arch liner access panel.

High Intensity Discharge bulb

(Dipped Beam (if installed on your vehicle))

 **Warning: High Intensity Discharge (HID) bulbs produce a very high voltage. They should only be serviced by an Aston Martin Dealership.**

HID systems produce a brilliant white light by establishing a high-voltage electrical arc between two electrodes within a sealed glass tube. Once the arc is established, the voltage lowers to normal operating conditions.

HID bulbs are not renewable. Refer to your Aston Martin Dealer if a HID bulb fails to operate.

Other External Bulbs

Front Indicator and Side Lamps

The front indicators and side lamps consist of LED's and are not repairable.

 *LEDs can last tens of thousands of hours and are resistant to heat, cold, shock and vibration.*

If a front indicator or a parking LED fails contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

Side Marker Lamps

If a side marker lamp bulb fails to operate, contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

Licence Plate Lights

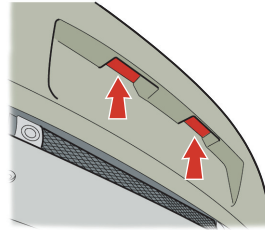
Bulb Specification:

Rating - 5W

Type - C5W

1. Taking care not to damage the vehicle trim, lever out the lens unit.
2. Twist, counterclockwise, and remove the bulb holder. Replace the defective bulb.
3. Install the bulb holder and clip the lens unit into its housing.

 *Always lever from the left side of the lens unit.*



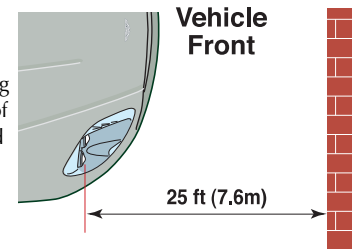
Rear Lamp Clusters

The rear indicators, stop and tail, reversing bulbs and rear Fog LEDs are contained in a sealed lamp cluster unit, one either side of the vehicle. The lamp cluster is not repairable. If a rear lamp fails contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

 *LEDs can last tens of thousands of hours and are resistant to heat, cold, shock and vibration.*

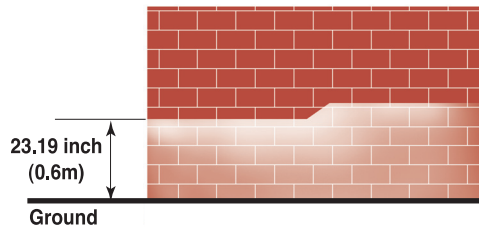
Headlamp Alignment

Headlamp aim check and adjustment must be completed with the vehicle parked on a flat surface facing a vertical wall at a distance of 25 ft (7.6 m) to the outboard internal lens, with no additional loads in the vehicle.



Check

1. Set the dipped beam to ON, ensuring that only the outer lamp each side is ON.
2. Measure the height of the left side of the beam pattern projected onto the wall. This should measure 23.19 in (0.60 m) from the ground for a correctly aimed lamp. This must be completed for both right and left side headlamps.



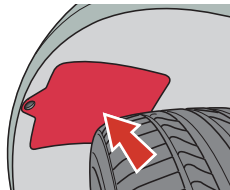
Adjustment

⚠ Warning: Never allow anyone to turn the steering wheel whilst working in the road wheel arch.

⚠ Warning: Never remove the bulb access caps without reading the bulb replacement instructions.

Should either headlamp require adjustment:

1. Remove the access panel.
Turn the retaining screw 90° anti clockwise using a flat bladed screw driver or coin and pull out the access panel.

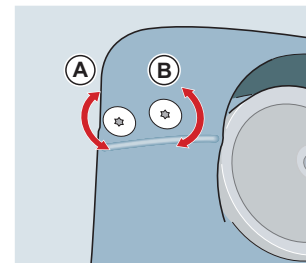


2. Adjust the headlamp aim by turning the adjusters using a T-20 torx driver.



[A] - Horizontal aim

[B] - Vertical aim



3. Replace the access panel by snapping into place and installing the retaining screw, and turning 90° clockwise.

Check the vertical beam angle by reversing the vehicle backwards 12 ft (3.6 m) and repeating the check procedure. The beam height should have reduced by 1 in (25 mm).

Internal Bulbs

High Level Stop Lamp

The high level mounted stop lamp unit consists of LEDs and is not repairable. If a high level mounted stop lamp LED fails contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

 *LEDs can last tens of thousands of hours and are resistant to heat, cold, shock and vibration.*

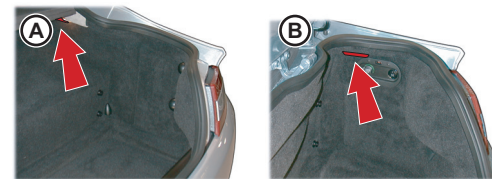
Trunk Lamp

Bulb Specification:

Rating - 10W

Type - C10W

1. Taking care not to damage the vehicle trim, lever out the lens unit. Replace the defective bulb.
2. Clip the lens unit into its housing.



[A] - Coupe

[B] - Roadster

Other Internal Bulbs



[1] - Footwell lamp

[2] - Door lamps

[3] - Reading lamps

Bulb Specifications:

	Footwell lamp	Door lamps	Reading lamps
Rating	5W	5W	LED
Type	W5W (Blue)	C5W (Festoon)	

1. Taking care not to damage the vehicle trim, lever out the lens unit.
2. Replace the defective bulb.

Door lamp only: Open the access flap and replace the defective bulb

3. Press the lens unit into its housing until it clips into position.

Door Window Reset

If power to the electric windows has been interrupted for any reason, they will fail to operate correctly until reset.

1. Sit in the driver's seat. Close both doors, insert the vehicle key into the Ignition Control and move to position 'I' (ignition ON).
2. Press firmly and hold the window switch until the window is at the maximum down position. Continue to hold the button for five seconds then release.
3. Pull back and hold the window switch until the window is in the maximum up position. Continue to hold the switch for a further five seconds, then release.
4. The window is now reset. Repeat for the second window.

Bodywork

Checks and Maintenance

Door drain holes

Check the drain holes in the bottom face of each door periodically and clear if necessary with, i.e. a short length of wire or a pipe cleaner.

Vehicle Cleaning

Paint Work

Modern water based paints are much safer and more environmentally friendly than solvent based paints. Water based paints are however more susceptible to contamination and marking by corrosive substances. The following list is not exhaustive but does show the most common contaminants which may adversely affect your paint work:



Other groups of contaminants may be added to this list as experience of water based paints and finishes increases.

- Bird Droppings
- Antifreeze
- Tree Sap
- Oils and Greases
- Insect Remains

Wash such substances from the vehicle using clean warm water with vehicle shampoo, at the earliest opportunity, especially in sunny weather which can accelerate contamination.

Washing

⚠ Warning: Washing and polishing agents containing silicone should not be applied to glass. This will reduce the efficiency of the windshield wipers, causing smears which will reduce visibility, particularly during darkness and in the rain.

⚠ Commercially operated automatic vehicle washes, jet washes and power operated mops are not recommended. The detergents used can contain certain chemicals which may, over time, be detrimental to some exterior parts of the vehicle. Prolonged usage of automatic vehicle washes and power operated mops will also cause fine scratches in the paint surface.

For best results, do not wash the vehicle in strong sunlight. Allow the vehicle to cool before washing. Do not use household soaps or detergents. Do not direct water hoses at full force around the door and trunk lid seals.

When washing the vehicle, first hose it down first to remove all dust and mud residue.

When dust and mud have been removed wash gently with a soft sponge using cold or warm water with a mild neutral detergent as directed by the detergent manufacturer. Rinse thoroughly with clean water to remove all traces of soapy water. Finally dry with a chamois leather, which should be rinsed regularly in clean water.

Wash and clean the vehicle's bright work, including the front grill, in the same way as the paint work, but make sure that the water is dried off completely leaving no water droplets (wipe last using a chamois leather): Chrome polish or other abrasive cleaners must not be used.

Aston Martin recommends the use of 'AUTOGLYM' vehicle care products or preparations of similar reputable manufacture for adding to the washing water. Make sure that the manufacture's instructions are followed.

During the winter months, it is advisable to wash the vehicle more frequently, paying particular attention to the underside to combat the detrimental effects of any salt and sand contamination picked up from treated roads.

To delay the onset of corrosion developing on the brake components Aston Martin recommend that after washing this vehicle, the vehicle should be driven a short distance to make sure that all the water and washing product has dried off.

Road Wheels

To avoid possible damage to the alloy road wheels, wheel nuts & wheel centre trims, from a build up of brake dust wash and clean the alloy road wheels frequently, using a mild soapy water solution only. Do not use chemical alloy road wheel cleaners, as they can often have a high acid or alkaline content and could cause discolouration. Always clean one wheel at a time and do not allow the cleaning solution to dry on the wheel. Fully flush off with clean water.

Polishing

Approximately twice a year, a good quality polish should be applied and then buffed, using a soft lint free cloth.

Alloy wheel rims should be treated with a cleaner which is specifically manufactured for this purpose.

Convertible Roof Fabric

(Roadster Only)

 **Do not use automatic vehicle washes. Brushes, detergents and pressurised water jets may damage the roof fabric.**

 **Do not use power washers. Jets of water may damage the weather seals and the roof fabric.**

 **Do not use spot cleaners, chemical diluents or any organic cleaners. If in doubt, contact your Aston Martin Dealer.**

To maintain the appearance and condition of the Roof fabric the cleaning and reproof recommendations given below should be followed.

This is of particular importance in the case of light colored roof fabrics.

 *Do not leave the Roof in the lowered (folded) position for longer than necessary. In certain circumstances permanent soiling along folds may occur.*

Cleaning

 *Remove bird droppings as soon as possible. The organic acids in bird lime can adversely affect the Roof fabric.*

Carefully vacuum clean the roof fabric to remove any loose particles. Gently, and evenly, wash the roof fabric using a mild soap solution and a soft brush.

 *A hard brush will damage the fabric fibres.*

Rinse the roof fabric thoroughly with clean water to remove any traces of soap. Allow the roof fabric to completely dry before operating the roof.

Reproofs

Due to its construction the roof fabric will stay watertight without re-proofing. However to retain the appearance of the roof, to reduce soiling and to improve the drying time Aston Martin recommended that the roof is re-proofed annually, by your Aston Martin Dealer.

Upholstery, Carpets and Seats

 **Warning:** Always follow the cleaning product manufacturer's printed warnings and instructions. Fumes from cleaning products may be dangerous in confined spaces. Make sure that the vehicle is well ventilated.

 **Certain types of clothing, such as denim and vegetable tanned leather, are prone to 'dye transfer'. This can cause discolouration in the leather. Make sure that the affected areas are cleaned and re-protected as soon as possible.**

The seats and soft trimmed components of this vehicle are covered in hand crafted leather.

In order to maintain the beauty of leather it will require regular cleaning, which, if neglected, may cause deterioration.

Where dust and dirt are allowed to accumulate and become engrained in the surface the leather may become permanently damaged.

Cleaning

Leather faced features should be cleaned with a with a damp cloth moistened with an undiluted leather cleaner.

Aston Martin recommend that at least every six months, a leather conditioner or preservative should be used. Appropriate leather care materials are obtainable from your Aston Martin Dealer.

Do not use chemical or abrasive materials to clean the leather. Petrol, white spirit, alcohol, detergents, washing-up liquid, household cleaners, furniture polishes and creams or solvents should never be used on the leather.

These products may give an initially impressive result, but their use will lead to rapid deterioration of the leather and will invalidate the warranty.

Alcantara roof linings and other soft trimmed areas may be brushed with a soft brush. Stains from water based substances such as coffee, tea or soft drinks should be cleaned as soon as possible with mild soap and water.

Consult your Aston Martin Dealer for instructions on the removal of more difficult stains such as oil, grease or ballpoint ink.

Carpets should be cleaned regularly with a vacuum cleaner. Any stains or grease marks should be removed with a good quality solvent suitable for use on carpets.

Care and Maintenance of Seat Belts

 ***Do not allow seat belts to be retracted until they are completely dry.***

To make sure that the restraint webbings are in proper working order, regularly check the seat belts. Look for fraying, cuts, burns and similar problems. Make sure that the latches and buckles function correctly. If a seat belt is not in good condition or is not working properly, consult your Aston Martin Dealer.

Any seat belt that has been worn during a serious collision should be replaced by an Aston Martin Dealer.

To clean the seat belts, use mild soap and water; do not use bleach, solvents or dyes as they can weaken the material. Allow the seat belts to dry thoroughly before use.

Under Hood Cleaning

Under hood cleaning using high pressure hoses or steam cleaners should not be carried out. The electronic control module connections and fuse boxes can be damaged by indiscriminate use of high pressure cleaning equipment.

Vehicle Storage

Recommendations



These recommendations apply to new and pre-owned cars either in Dealer or Customer ownership.

If your vehicle is not to be used for periods in excess of three months it should be stored in a dry, well ventilated building.

1. Drive the vehicle for a sufficient distance to warm the oil in the engine and the transaxle; make sure that the internal components of the engine are lubricated.
2. Check the engine coolant level. Top up if necessary with the correct antifreeze and water solution.
3. In order to take the weight off the tires, raise the vehicle with a jack and place supports under the front and rear suspension.



If the vehicle is not raised from the ground, increase the tire pressures to 50 psi (3.4 bar / 340 kpa). Cover the tires to exclude any light. Turn the wheels ¼ turn every month to avoid tire flat spots.

4. Roadster Only.

Raise the Roof.



Do not leave the Roof in the lowered position for longer than necessary. In certain circumstances permanent soiling along folds may occur.

5. If mains power is available, connect and set the Battery Conditioner to ON to maintain the battery in a fully charged state.
6. Once a month:
 - 1] Disconnect the battery conditioner (if installed).
 - 2] Start and run the engine until it is fully warmed up.
 - 3] Check there are no fluid leaks.
 - 4] Set the ignition to OFF.

5] Connect the Battery Conditioner.

6] Check and correct tire pressures if necessary.

When returning the vehicle to normal service, set the tire pressures to normal specification before driving on the road.

Extended Storage

For storage periods exceeding six months the following measures are recommended:



Do Not Drain Fuel System.

1. Run the engine until there is as small a quantity of fuel in the tank as is practical for storage purposes.
2. Add engine oil to the remaining fuel in the tank to make a concentration of 2% (i.e. 3 fl/oz per 2 pints of fuel), then run engine for not less than ten minutes to circulate mixture thoroughly through the entire fuel system.

3. Inspect rubber connections of coolant system and have them renewed if necessary.
4. Wash the vehicle bodywork thoroughly and repair any paint blisters or patches of corrosion in order to prevent any further deterioration. Apply a suitable polish.
5. Clean the carpets and upholstery thoroughly. Treat all leather upholstery with an application of a leather conditioner or preservative.
6. If the storage building is dry leave vehicle windows slightly open. If there is any tendency towards dampness close vehicle doors and windows and place an anti-moisture compound such as Silica desiccant bags in an open metal container inside vehicle.
7. Cover vehicle with a cotton or fabric cover.

Re-commissioning after Storage

Provided that the vehicle has been stored in accordance with the recommended procedure, the following points only should require attention before using your vehicle on the road.

1. Check the tire pressures, inflate if necessary, lower the vehicle to ground.
2. Drain the engine oil reservoir and the final drive unit, install a new engine oil filter element, then fill the engine and the final drive unit with approved oils. Check the coolant level and, if necessary, top-up with the correct antifreeze to water solution.
3. Check all fluid levels and top-up as necessary. Fill the fuel tank.

 **Starting the engine without sufficient lubrication can cause serious engine damage. Make sure that the engine oil pressure is established before allowing the engine to start.**

4. Obtain engine oil pressure:

- 4.1 Press and hold the accelerator hard to the floor. (this temporarily inhibits the fuel injection during cranking).
- 4.2 Fully press the brake (SportShift) or clutch (Manual) pedal down. Insert the vehicle key into the Ignition Control and move through to engine start. Allow the engine to crank until the oil pressure symbol  (in the instrument cluster) goes OFF (oil pressure in the engine).
- 4.3 Set the ignition to OFF. Release the vehicle key and accelerator pedal.

5. Roadster Only.

Check the operation of the Roof and check for oil leaks. If the Roof does not operate correctly during first use, operate the roof a few times (with the engine running to keep the battery at full voltage). If the roof still does not operate correctly contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

6. Start the engine normally and check that the oil pressure and ignition warning symbols go out as the engine starts (correct oil pressure and battery charging).
7. Raise the hood and check for leaks of fuel, oil and coolant.
8. Carefully test drive your vehicle and check the operation of all functions.

Braking performance can be impaired, initially, due to a fine film of corrosion on the brake rotor surface. Drive conservatively and, when **safe to do so**, frequently apply the brakes until rotor surfaces have been cleaned. Full braking performance should then be restored.

If in any doubt about the condition of your vehicle, have it checked by your Aston Martin Dealer.



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN

Specifications

Contents

Engine.....	12.2	Bulbs.....	12.6
Performance	12.2	Vehicle Specification	12.7
Power and Torque	12.3	Interior Features	12.7
Transmission	12.3	Exterior Dimensions	12.8
Electrics.....	12.4	Interior Dimensions.....	12.10
Steering.....	12.4	Exterior Features	12.10
Suspension.....	12.4	Vehicle Weights	12.10
Brakes.....	12.5	Fluids.....	12.11
Wheels.....	12.5	Capacities	12.12
Tires.....	12.6		

Engine

All alloy, quad overhead cam 32 valve V8. Four knock sensors - two per cylinder head. Cylinder block heater (if installed on your vehicle). Variable inlet camshaft timing.

Fuel: Recommended Premium Unleaded Gasoline 93 Octane (R+M)/2 for optimum performance. 91 Octane (R+M)/2 Premium Unleaded Gasoline minimum

Fuel Delivery System: Multipoint sequential fuel injection

Capacity: 4735 cc

Firing Order: 1 - 5 - 4 - 2 - 6 - 3 - 7 - 8

Idle Speed: 750 rpm

Bore: 3.58 in (91.0 mm)

Stroke: 3.58 in (91.0 mm)

Spark Plugs: NGK – IFR7N-10

Spark Plug Gap: 0.35 - 0.040 in (0.9 - 1.0 mm)

Compression Ratio: 11.3:1

Ignition: ‘Coil on Plug’ ignition system

Emission control: 4 Oxygen sensors and three way catalytic convertors. Evaporative loss purge

Lubrication: Dry sump pressurised lubrication. Oil reservoir

Performance

Coupe and Roadster₁

Maximum Power: 420 bhp (313 kw) @ 7300 rpm

Maximum Torque: 346 lb/ft (470 Nm) @ 5000 rpm

Maximum Speed: 174 mph (280 km/h) (where permitted)

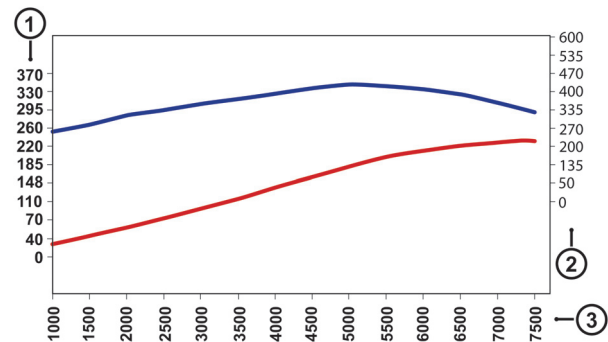
0-60 mph: 4.7 seconds

0-100 km/h: 4.9 seconds

Max Engine Speed: 7000 rpm

₁. Manual and SportShift transmission.

Power and Torque



[1] - Torque (lb/ft)
[2] - Power (bhp)
[3] - Engine speed (rpm)

Transmission

Manual Transaxle: Graziano six speed transaxle with integrated shifter bellcrank system (Cable Operated).
SportShift Transaxle: Graziano six speed transaxle with integrated, electronically-controlled hydraulic shifting system.

Gear Ratios₁:

Gear	Ratio
1st	3.15:1
2nd	1.95:1
3rd	1.43:1
4th	1.15:1
5th	0.94:1
6th	0.76:1
Reverse	2.38:1

₁. Manual and SportShift transmission.

Final Drive₁: Ratio - 3.91:1. Multi plate Limited slip differential
Clutch₁: Single plate - 10.9 in (267 mm) diameter

Electrics

Alternator: Denso SC2 150 Amps
Voltage Regulation: 14.4V $\pm$ 0.5V @ 68°F (20°C)
Battery: Varta 90AH

Steering

Rack and pinion power assisted steering. Column tilt and reach adjustments.
Turns lock to lock: 3.0
Turning Circle: 36.4 ft (11.1 m) (Curb to Curb)
Toe₁:

Front	Rear
(toe out)	(toe in)
-4' ($\pm$ 2') - Individual	10' (+5' / – 0') Individual
-8' ($\pm$ 4') - Total	20' ($\pm$ 10') - Total

Suspension

Front: Aluminum independent double wishbone. Coil over aluminum monotube dampers and anti-roll bar.
Rear: Aluminum independent double wishbone. Coil over aluminum monotube dampers and anti-roll bar.

¹. With the vehicle at its design weight. Refer to your Aston Martin Dealer.

Brakes

Footbrake

Ventilated and grooved steel rotors all round:

	Front	Rear
Diameter	14 in (355 mm)	13 in (330 mm)
Calipers	Four piston	Four piston

Parking Brake

Lever and cable operated independent parking brake calipers on each rear brake rotor.

Features

Anti Lock Braking System (ABS), Electronic Brake force Distribution (EBD), Emergency Brake Assist (EBA), Dynamic Stability Control (DSC), Traction Control (TCS) and Positive Torque Control (PTC).

Wheels

Aston Martin Aluminum Alloy:

	Front	Rear
Factory Install	8.5J x 19	9.5J x 19
Winter Wheels	8 x 18	9 x 18

Aston Martin Forged Aluminum Alloy:

	Front	Rear
Factory Option	8.5J x 19	9.5J x 19

Aston Martin Lightweight Forged Aluminum Alloy:

	Front	Rear
SportPack Wheels ^a	8.5J x 19	9.5J x 19

^a. Installed with Bridgestone tires only.

Wheel Nut Torque

Tighten every second nut until all five nuts are tightened.

Tighten all wheel nuts in two stages.

1. To 60 lb/ft (80 Nm) in one continuous movement.
2. To 133 lb/ft (180 Nm) in one continuous movement.



Tires

Tire Loading

Tires installed to this vehicle shall have a maximum load rating not less than 1389 lb (630 kg) (front) and 1565 lb (710 kg) (rear), or a load index of 92 (front) and 96 (rear) and a speed category of ZR.

 The Original Equipment tires installed to this vehicle are an approved specification, designated either by: ‘AM8’ (19” Pirelli) or ‘AM9’ (19” Bridgestone) on the sidewall.

Summer Tires

	Front	Rear
Bridgestone RE050	235/40 ZR 19 (92Y)	275/35 ZR 19 (96Y)
Pirelli P-Zero Corsa _a	245/40 ZR19 (98Y)	285/35 ZR19 (103Y)
	XL	XL

_a. Sport Tire: Not available on SportPack wheels.

Winter Tires

	Front	Rear
Pirelli W240SN	225/45 R18 (95V)	255/40 R18 (95V)

Tire Air Pressures

Cold Inflation₁:

Front	Rear
36psi (2.5 bar / 250 kPa)	38psi (2.6 bar / 260 kPa)

₁. Summer and Winter Tires.

Bulbs

	Rating	Type
Headlamp dipped beam (HID)	35W	D1S HID
Headlamp dipped beam (Hal)	55W	H11
Headlamp main beam	65W	H9
Footwell lamps (Blue)	5W	W5W
Door lamps (Festoon)	5W	C5W
Side Repeater	5W	WY5W
Trunk lamps	10W	C10W
Licence plate lamps	5W	C5W
Side lamp		LED
Reading lamps		LED
Front Indicator lamps		LED
High Mounted Stop Lamp		LED

The rear lamp cluster is a sealed unit. If any rear cluster lamp fails to operate contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

Vehicle Specification

Body

Extruded aluminum bonded body structure with aluminum and composite body panels. Extruded aluminum door side impact beams.

- Two door coupe with tailgate (boot lid) and 2+0 seating.
- Two door convertible with 2+0 seating.

Towing

This vehicle is not engineered to tow any form of caravan, boat or trailer.

No towing devices are approved for installing to this vehicle, other than a towing eye to aid recovery or loading of this vehicle onto a transporter.

Interior Features

- Handcrafted leather and fabric trim
- Formed aluminum facia₁
- Polished aluminum and painted alloy details
- Automatic Air-conditioning
- Alarm system interacting with the central locking system and PATS immobiliser system
- Driver and passenger dual stage airbags and occupant side airbags
- Passenger airbag deactivation₂
- Ten direction electrically adjusted drivers seat (including height adjustment) with optional seat heater
- Organic electroluminescent (OEL) displays

₁. Alternative options.
₂. Sport seat only.

- Infotainment Center
 - Audio system with radio and six CD autochanger, USB port, iPod port and an Auxiliary socket
 - 160W Audio System₃
 - 700W Audio System with Dolby Pro Logic II₃
 - Hard Disk Drive (HDD) Satellite Navigation system₃
 - Hands-Free Phone system₃

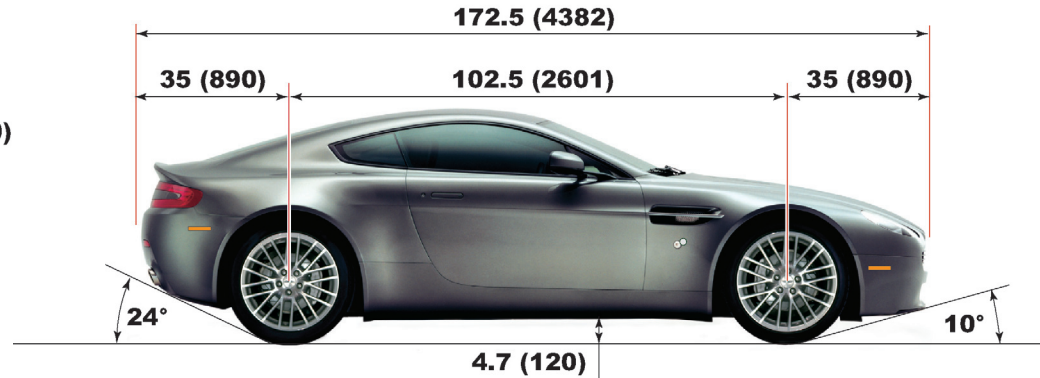
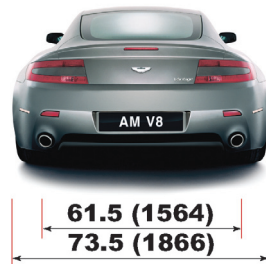
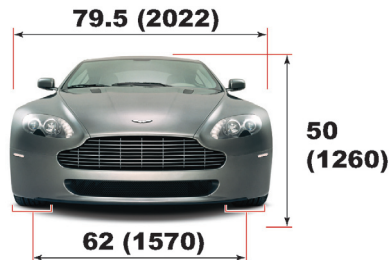
₃. If installed on your vehicle.

Exterior Dimensions

Coupe

in (mm)

Ride height is measured at GVW.

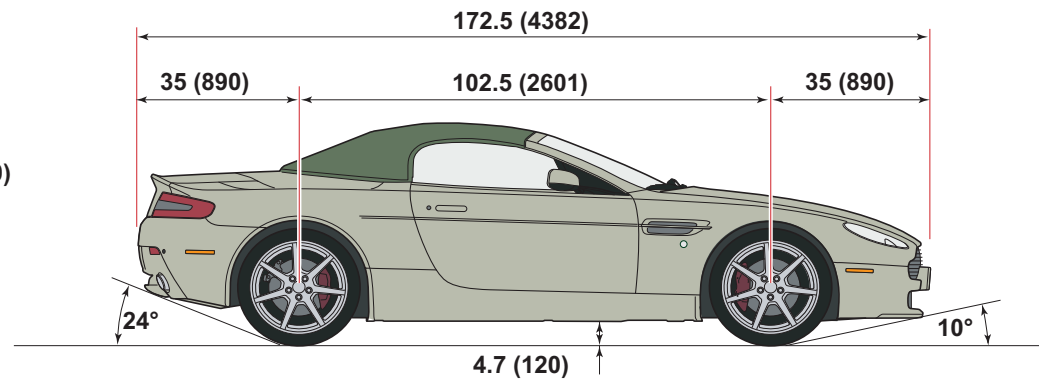
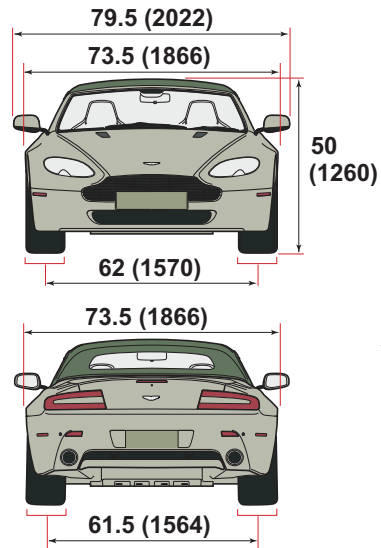


Roadster

in (mm)

Ride height is measured at GVW.

 The minimum headroom required to open or close the convertible roof is 73.5 in (1865 mm).



Interior Dimensions

	Coupe	Roadster
Effective Headroom	36.7 in (933 mm)	36.5 in (927 mm)
Effective Legroom	43 in (1086 mm)	43 in (1086 mm)
Trunk Volume _a	8.4 cu ft (239 ltr)	6 cu ft (197 ltr)

_a. VDA.

Exterior Features

- Door mirrors
 - Heated, electrically adjusted
 - Position memory system₁
- Power Fold system
- Auto fold system
- Electrically operated door windows
- Heated rear windshield
- Parking sensors

₁. If installed on your vehicle.

Vehicle Weights

Manual and SportShift:

	Coupe	Roadster
Curb weight	3594 lb (1630 kg)	3770 lb (1710 kg))
Gross Vehicle Weight	4244 lb (1925 kg)	4420 lb (2005 kg))
Boot Maximum Load	4034 lb (1830 kg) _a	

_a. Evenly distributed.

Fluids

! *To achieve the required high performance of synthetic lubricants, do not mix with mineral oils.*

Engine oil: The engine in your vehicle has been engineered and fully tested to run with:

- Castrol Edge Sport 10w-60
- or
- Castrol Formula RS 10w-60

However, if these oils are not available, a fully synthetic 5w-50 or 10w-60 oil meeting the specification ACEA A3/B3 can be used. No other viscosity grades or specifications are acceptable.

! *Do not mix OAT antifreeze with glycol based antifreeze.*

Engine coolant: 50% water, 50% Havoline OAT

Transaxle oil: Castrol BTO 270A₁

SportShift Fluid: Pentosin CHF-11S

Brake and Clutch fluid: Castrol Super Response Dot 4

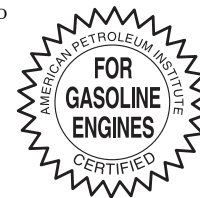
Power steering fluid: Pentosin CHF 11S

A/C refrigerant: HFC134A.

Engine Oil

Only use oils 'Certified For Gasoline Engines' by the American Petroleum Institute (API).

An oil with this trademark symbol conforms to the current engine and emission system protection standards and fuel economy requirements of the International Lubricant Standardization and Approval Committee (ISLAC), comprised of U.S. and Japanese automobile manufacturers.



¹. Only available from Aston Martin Dealers.

Capacities

Engine oil system (including filter): 10.5 quart (10 ltr)

Engine cooling system: 14.8 quart (14 ltr)

Screen washer reservoir: 6.2 quart (5.9 ltr)

Power steering system: TBA

Transaxle & Cooler: 4.6 quart (4.5 ltr)

SportShift system: TBA

Fuel Tank: 21 gall (80 ltr)₁



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN

₁. Approximately 20.5 Gall (78 ltr) usable.

Service

Contents

Pre-delivery Inspection	A.2
Service Periods.....	A.4
Service Schedule	A.5
Service Record	A.10
Anti Corrosion Inspection	A.12
Replacement of Airbag Units	A.13
Replacement of Seat Belt Pre-tensioners.....	A.14
Field Service Actions	A.14
Service Action Recalls.....	A.15

Pre-delivery Inspection

This free series of checks is carried out on the vehicle by the Selling Dealer before delivery. The checks make sure that you receive a vehicle which matches the high quality standards set by Aston Martin Limited.

Make sure that the entry is stamped and signed as completed. The following checks will be made:

Levels and Leaks

- Engine oil
- Power steering oil
- Brake and Clutch fluid
- Engine coolant level
- Engine coolant specific gravity
- Windshield washer fluid
- Fuel system
- Transaxle leak check
- Battery

Mechanical Functions

- Gear selection
- Clutch operation
- Throttle pedal operation
- Parking brake operation
- Steering column adjustment and lock operation
- Seat adjuster rails
- Hood release and catch
- Door operation and locks
- Storage compartments
- Rear view mirror
- Trunk release and catch

Electrical Checks

- Battery condition
- Heated rear shield
- Windshield and headlamp₁ washers
- Windshield wipers

- Air Conditioner controls
- Infotainment centre operation
- All speakers
- Reversing, Licence plate and Brake lamps
- Side and headlamps
- Rear fog lamps
- Hazard warning lamps
- Instrument illumination and dimmer
- Gauges and warning symbols
- Centre stack controls
- Horns
- Reset clock
- Blower motor
- Seat belt warning system
- Security system and Vehicle key

₁. Installed with HID bulb Dipped beam.

-
- Interior lamps
 - Cigar lighter₁
 - All seat functions
 - Windows operation
 - Door and Trunk courtesy lamps
 - Central locking system
 - Filler flap lock operation
 - Door mirror adjustments
 - Seat belt operation
 - Clutch pedal start inhibit
 - Interrogate fault codes
 - Record battery open-circuit voltage
 - Tire pressure sensing
 - Centre console controls
-

₁. If installed on your vehicle.

Wheels and Tires

- Install locking road wheel nuts₂
- Check Road wheel nuts torque
- Tire pressures
- Tire orientation
- Check tire pressure monitoring colour coded valve collars

Road Test

- Engine
 - Clutch
 - Transaxle
 - Steering
 - Brakes
 - Wheel balance
 - Dampers
 - Exhaust by-pass system
 - Gear shift operation
 - Noise, vibration or harshness
-

₂. If installed on your vehicle.

- Air Conditioning performance
- Instruments operation
- Seat belt and buckle operation
- Steering wheel alignment
- Dynamic Stability Control (DSC), Traction control and Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) operation
- Transmission oil cooler

Final Checks

- Drive belt tensioner operation
- Fuel and brake pipe security
- Fuel and fluid leaks
- Security of cooling hoses
- Exhaust catalyst security

Hand-over Preparation

- Check function of all vehicle keys and locks
- Clean bodywork and road wheel arch liners
- Clean off all transit labels
- Valet Vehicle
- De-grease windshield
- Install carpets
- Remove interior protection
- Check Owner's Guide
- Check tools
- Install Licence plates
- Tire sealant kit
- Check towing eye (front and rear) installation
- Battery conditioner₁
- Field Service Actions and Recall status

Free Pre-delivery Inspection

*4.75 Hours

Service Actions checked:

Open Service Actions completed:

Signature:

Date:

(Dealer Stamp)

* Scheduled operation time.

Service Periods

Vehicle servicing is every 10,000 mile (16,000 km) 12 months, which ever occurs first.

- 10,000 mile (16,000 km) or 12 month
- 20,000 mile (32,000 km) 24 month
- 30,000 mile (48,000 km)) or 36 month

₁. If installed on your vehicle.

Service Schedule

The following service schedules are recommended for this vehicle. The schedules may be modified if necessary. Please consult your Aston Martin Dealer for details of any service schedule updates.

10000mls 16000km 12 months	20000mls 32000km 24 months	
Pre-Maintenance		
x	x	Install vehicle protection kit and fender covers
x	x	Check Bulletins, Field Service Actions and Recall Status
Fluids, Filters and Leaks Checks		
x	x	Renew engine oil (drain oil reservoir and sump)
x	x	Renew engine oil filter and clean sump filters
x	x	Check for engine oil leaks
Every 30,000 mile (48,000 km) or three years		Renew air cleaner elements
Every 20,000 mile (32,000 km) or two years		Renew air cleaner elements (extreme environment)

10000mls 16000km 12 months	20000mls 32000km 24 months	
x	-	Check transaxle for leaks. Top up if required
96,000 mile (60,000 km) or every six years	100,000 mile (160,000 km) or every ten years	Check transaxle oil level. Top up if required
Every 40,000 mile (64,000 km) or four years		Renew transaxle oil and clean filter
Every 100,000 mile (160,000 km) or five years		Renew engine coolant - check concentration
x	x	Check and top-up engine coolant
x	x	Check fuel hoses, pipes and unions for leaks, security and condition
Every two years		Renew brake and clutch fluid

10000mls 16000km 12 months	20000mls 32000km 24 months	
x	x	Check, top-up brake and clutch fluid reservoir
x	x	Check power steering system for leaks, security and condition
x	x	Check brake hoses, pipes and unions for leaks, security and condition
x	x	Check suspension dampers for leaks
x	x	Top-up windshield and headlamp washer reservoir
x	x	Check exhaust system for leaks
x	x	Check Air Conditioning system for leaks
-	x	Renew pollen filter
x	x	Check and top-up power steering reservoir
x	x	Check SportShift system for leaks
x	x	Check SportShift system fluid level
x	x	Check SportShift system for vents for blockages

10000mls 16000km 12 months	20000mls 32000km 24 months	
Mechanical Function Checks		
x	x	Lubricate the hood secondary catch
x	x	Check security of the hood catch. Check that the hood secondary catch moves freely over its whole travel and returns smartly under spring pressure
x	x	Check and adjust the accessory drive belt tension, renew if necessary
Every 150,000 mile (240,000 km) or fifteen years		Replace the accessory drive belt
x	x	Adjust parking brake cables, if required
-	x	Check condition of parking brake pads

10000mls 16000km 12 months	20000mls 32000km 24 months	
x	x	Inspect brake pad wear and condition of rotors and calipers. Replace brake pads and wear warning leads if 60% worn
x	-	Check wiper blade inserts. Renew if necessary
-	x	Renew wiper blades
x	x	Inspect coolant radiator, Air Conditioning condenser and transmission cooler. Clean if required
x	x	Check security of exhaust system mountings and heat shields. Check operation of exhaust by-pass valve
x	x	Check cooling and heating system hoses for security and condition

10000mls 16000km 12 months	20000mls 32000km 24 months	
x	x	Check Air Conditioning hoses for security and condition
x	-	Check suspension ball joints, gaiters and bushes for security and condition
-	x	Check tightness of driveshaft bolts
x	x	Check interior rear view mirror for security and function
-	x	Check condition of underbody protection and wheel arch liners
Every 40,000 mile (64,000 km) or four years		Clean throttle butterflies

10000mls 16000km 12 months	20000mls 32000km 24 months	
Electrical Function Checks		
70,000 mile (112,000 km)		Renew spark plugs
x	x	Check and record battery voltage
x	x	Clean and service battery connections if required
-	x	Check headlamp alignment. Adjust if required
x	x	Check operation of all lamps
x	x	Check operation of all warning symbols
x	x	Check audible warnings including security system
x	x	Check operation of the horns
x	x	Check operation of the windshield wipers
x	x	Check windshield and headlamp _a washers and jets

10000mls 16000km 12 months	20000mls 32000km 24 months	
x	x	Check rear view mirrors for security and function
x	x	Check and operate powerfold mirrors
x	x	Check and operate electric windows
x	x	Check service interval display and reset
-	x	Replace vehicle key battery
Wheels and Tire Checks		
x	x	Check for correct tire size, type and orientation
x	x	Check and report tire tread depth
x	x	Check tires for uneven and excessive wear or damage
x	x	Check tire pressures. Adjust if required
x	x	Check torque of road wheel nuts. Adjust if required

10000mls 16000km 12 months	20000mls 32000km 24 months	
x	x	Check road wheel rims for inner and outer damage.
x	x	Check colour coded valve collars for correct location (Tire pressure monitoring)
x	x	Check 'use by' date of tire sealant kit.
Anti Corrosion Check		
x	x	Check body panels and underbody for corrosion starting from the inside - out (excluding stone chips).

10000mls 16000km 12 months	20000mls 32000km 24 months	
Final Checks		
x	x	Degrease windshield
x	x	Check clutch functionality
x	x	Check ABS and Traction Control operation
x	x	Check operation and condition of all seat belts and buckles
x	x	Check that fuel filler bowl rain drain is clear
x	x	Carry out road test
x	x	Check SportShift operation of gear change modes

a. Installed with HID bulb Dipped beam.

Service Record

The following service records cover the regular services at 10,000 mile (16,000 km) or 12 month, which ever occurs first, intervals. Make sure that at each service the appropriate entry is stamped and signed as completed.

Vehicle Identification Number:

Date of Delivery:

* Scheduled operation time.

10,000 mile (16,000 km) or 12 month

*3.00 Hours

Service Actions checked:

Open Service Actions completed:

Signature:

Date:

(Dealer Stamp)

30,000 mile (48,000 km) or 3rd year

*3.25 Hours

Service Actions checked:

Open Service Actions completed:

Signature:

Date:

(Dealer Stamp)

20,000 mile (32,000 km) or 24 month

*3.85 Hours

Service Actions checked:

Open Service Actions completed:

Signature:

Date:

(Dealer Stamp)

40,000 mile (64,000 km) or 4th year

*4.15 Hours

Service Actions checked:

Open Service Actions completed:

Signature:

Date:

(Dealer Stamp)

50,000 mile (80,000 km) or 5th year

*3.00 Hours

Service Actions checked:

Open Service Actions completed:

Signature:

Date:

(Dealer Stamp)

70,000 mile (113,000 km) or 7th year

*4.10 Hours

Service Actions checked:

Open Service Actions completed:

Signature:

Date:

(Dealer Stamp)

90,000 mile (145,000 km) or 9th year

*3.25 Hours

Service Actions checked:

Open Service Actions completed:

Signature:

Date:

(Dealer Stamp)

60,000 mile (97,000 km) or 6th year

*4.10 Hours

Service Actions checked:

Open Service Actions completed:

Signature:

Date:

(Dealer Stamp)

80,000 mile (129,000 km) or 8th year

*4.15 Hours

Service Actions checked:

Open Service Actions completed:

Signature:

Date:

(Dealer Stamp)

100,000 mile (161,000 km) or 10th year

*4.05 Hours

Service Actions checked:

Open Service Actions completed:

Signature:

Date:

(Dealer Stamp)

Anti Corrosion Inspection

Anti Corrosion Inspection 1st Year

Signature: _____

Date: _____

Odometer: _____

(Dealer Stamp)

Anti Corrosion Inspection 3rd Year

Signature: _____

Date: _____

Odometer: _____

(Dealer Stamp)

Anti Corrosion Inspection 5th Year

Signature: _____

Date: _____

Odometer: _____

(Dealer Stamp)

Anti Corrosion Inspection 2nd Year

Signature: _____

Date: _____

Odometer: _____

(Dealer Stamp)

Anti Corrosion Inspection 4th Year

Signature: _____

Date: _____

Odometer: _____

(Dealer Stamp)

Anti Corrosion Inspection 6th Year

Signature: _____

Date: _____

Odometer: _____

(Dealer Stamp)

**Anti Corrosion Inspection
7th Year**

Signature: _____

Date: _____

Odometer: _____

(Dealer Stamp)

**Anti Corrosion Inspection
8th Year**

Signature: _____

Date: _____

Odometer: _____

(Dealer Stamp)

**Anti Corrosion Inspection
9th Year**

Signature: _____

Date: _____

Odometer: _____

(Dealer Stamp)

**Anti Corrosion Inspection
10th Year**

Signature: _____

Date: _____

Odometer: _____

(Dealer Stamp)

Replacement of Airbag Units

Every 10 years from the date of vehicle registration, all airbag units must be replaced. To make sure this is completed correctly and safely, this work should be carried out by your Aston Martin Dealership.

**Airbag Replacement
10th Year**

Signature: _____

Date: _____

Odometer: _____

(Dealer Stamp)

Replacement of Seat Belt Pre-tensioners

Every 10 years from the date of vehicle registration, all seat belt pre-tensioners must be replaced. To make sure this is completed correctly and safely, this work should be carried out by your Aston Martin Dealership.

Seat Belt Pre-Tensioners Replacement
10th Year

Signature:

Date:

Odometer:

(Dealer Stamp)

Field Service Actions

Action No.	Date	Dealer	Action No.	Date	Dealer

Service Action Recalls

[illegible]

ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN

Assistance

Contents

Aston Martin Roadside Assistance	B.2
--	-----



Aston Martin Roadside Assistance

In the event of a breakdown caused by a defect covered under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty, the Aston Martin Roadside Assistance scheme will provide the Aston Martin owner with emergency roadside assistance at no cost. The scheme also provides the following benefits:

- Exclusive 24-Hour Toll-Free Assistance Line
- 24-Hour Emergency Towing
- 24-Hour Roadside Assistance
- 24-Hour Emergency Lockout Service (up to US \$100 per call out)
- Sign and Drive Service
- 24-Hour Emergency Trip Interruption Benefits
- 24-Hour Aston Martin Dealer Locator Service
- Repaired Vehicle Reunite Service
- Assistance Experience Survey Card

The Aston Martin Roadside Assistance scheme benefits provide for towing to the nearest approved dealer. Should the vehicle breakdown occur 150 or more miles (241 or more km) from the nearest approved dealer and 150 or more miles (241 or more km) from the primary residence of the owner or operator, the owner or operator is entitled to trip interruption benefits. Trip interruption benefits include lodging and meals for up to 2 nights, and alternative transportation. Trip interruption benefits are limited to a maximum of US \$500 per interruption.

The term of the Aston Martin Roadside Assistance scheme runs concurrent with the Aston Martin New Vehicle Limited Warranty. The plan does not cover the following:

- Rental fleet vehicles
- Breakdowns caused by accident, vandalism, racing or abuse.
- Additional towing costs for towing to other than the nearest approved dealer to the breakdown site.

Expenses for such items as entertainment, recreation, and non-essential goods and services are excluded from trip interruption benefits.

How Does the Plan Work?

The national toll-free assistance telephone number is shown on your Roadside Assistance Membership Card and on the label on the drivers side door pillar.

If your Aston Martin vehicle suffers a breakdown whilst driving, proceed as follows:

Have your Aston Martin Roadside Assistance Membership Card ready.

Call the toll-free number: **1- 888 - 59ASTON**.

It is available 24 hours a day.

Provide the Roadside Assistance Service Representative with:

- Your name
- The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), which is printed on your Roadside Assistance Membership Card. The VIN is also printed on a decal on the drivers side dashboard. This decal may be viewed from outside the vehicle by looking in through the front windshield.
- The vehicle location
- Where you are calling from, including a telephone number on which you may be contacted

The Roadside Assistance Service Representative will work with you to find the best solution to your concern.

Please stay with the vehicle until assistance arrives.

Further Information

See the separate brochure provided for full details of the Aston Martin Roadside Assistance scheme. The terms of the scheme may be changed without notice.



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN

Warranty

Contents

1 Aston Martin Warranties.....	C.2	12 What Replacement Parts should I use.....	C.21
2 New Vehicle Limited Warranty	C.4	13 Preserve Your Emissions Warranty	C.21
3 New Vehicle Limited Warranty Statement.....	C.6	14 Customer Satisfaction	C.22
4 What is not Covered under the Warranties.....	C.6	15 The Better Business Bureau Auto Line Program	C.23
5 Customer Satisfaction Campaigns	C.11	16 State Warranty Enforcement Laws	C.25
6 Anti-Perforation Corrosion Warranty	C.11	17 Aston Martin Extended Service Contract.....	C.25
7 Emissions Defect Warranty	C.12	Owner Details.....	C.26
8 Emissions Performance Warranty.....	C.12	Owner Details.....	C.28
9 California Emissions Warranties	C.15	Owner Warranty Transfer (3).....	C.29
10 How do I get Service under the Emissions Warranties.....	C.19		
11 How do I handle Emergency Repairs to make sure they do not affect the Emissions Warranties.....	C.19		

1 Aston Martin Warranties

This chapter contains information essential for the understanding of the Aston Martin warranties and for the implementation of any necessary Warranty rectification. It is recommended that you read this chapter carefully to familiarize yourself with the benefits available under the various warranties.

1.1 Warranty Communications

Any communications regarding Warranty should initially be addressed to your Aston Martin Dealer. If necessary, you may communicate with Aston Martin at the appropriate address listed.

National After Sales Manager
Aston Martin Lagonda of North America Inc.
9920 Irvine Center Drive
Irvine, CA 92618

Warranty Department
Aston Martin Lagonda Limited
Banbury Road
Gaydon
WARWICK
Warwickshire
CV35 0DB
England

1.2 Warranties

All Aston Martin warranties are issued by Aston Martin Lagonda Limited on behalf of Aston Martin Lagonda of North America Inc., the sole authorized United States agent of Aston Martin vehicles. These warranties only cover vehicles originally specified and built by Aston Martin for the United States and Canadian markets.

Aston Martin warranties are in favor of the original purchasers and each subsequent owner during the respective Warranty period.

Aston Martin warranties are effective and will be honored only in the United States and Canada. Outside the United States and Canada, all Aston Martin Warranty service and repair will be performed in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Aston Martin United Kingdom Warranty issued by the vehicle manufacturer.

The Warranty period for all Warranties (defined below) for vehicles begin on the date of first retail sale, or on the date of entry into demonstrator service, whichever comes first.

The United Kingdom Warranty covers vehicle (subject to certain restrictions) for a period of three (3) years, unlimited mileage from the date of first retail sale, or on the date of entry into demonstrator service, whichever comes first. Details of the U.K. Warranty will be provided upon request.

A summary of all Aston Martin warranties applicable to this vehicle (together the Warranties) are as follows:

(a) New Vehicle Limited Warranty

Bumper to bumper - Three years, unlimited mileage

(b) Vehicle Anti-Perforation Corrosion Warranty

Period of cover - Ten years, unlimited mileage

(c) Vehicle Emission Warranties (Federal)

Emissions Defects Warranty - Three years or 36,000 miles (58,000km) of vehicle use

Certain emission parts₁ - Eight years or 80,000 miles (129,000km) of vehicle use

Emissions Performance Warranty - Two years or 24,000 miles (38,500 km) of vehicle use

(d) Vehicle Emission Warranties (Californian Vehicles)

Emissions Defect Warranty (Short Term) - Three years or 50,000 miles (80,000 km) of vehicle use

Emissions Defect Warranty (Long Term₂) - Seven years or 70,000 miles (113,000 km) of vehicle use

Emissions Performance Warranty - Three years or 50,000 miles (80,000 km) of vehicle use

¹. Catalytic convertor, the electronic emissions control unit and / or the onboard emissions diagnostic device (required eight years or 80,000 mile (129,000 km) coverage per Clean Air Act).

². These specific parts were selected on the basis of their estimated replacement cost at the time your vehicle was certified by the California Air Resources Board (CARB) for sale in California.

1.3 Changes to Vehicles

Aston Martin and its authorized dealers (the **‘Dealers’**) reserve the right to make changes in or additions to vehicles built or sold by them at any time without incurring any obligation to make the same or similar changes or additions to vehicles previously built or sold.

1.4 Reservation of Rights

Aston Martin and its Dealers reserve the right to provide post-Warranty repairs, conduct recalls, or extend the Warranty coverage period for certain vehicles or vehicle populations, at Aston Martin’s sole discretion.

The fact that Aston Martin provided such measures to a particular vehicle or vehicle population, does not in any way obligate Aston Martin to provide similar accommodations to other owners of similar vehicles.

1.5 Condition

As a fundamental condition of the Warranties, you are responsible for correctly using, maintaining and caring for your vehicle in accordance with the Aston Martin Owner’s Guide (the **‘Owner’s Guide’**). Aston Martin recommends that you maintain copies of all maintenance records and receipts for review by Aston Martin.

2 New Vehicle Limited Warranty

2.1 Warranty Limitations

This New Vehicle Limited Warranty is the only express Warranty applicable to your vehicle. Aston Martin neither assumes, nor authorizes anyone to assume for it, any other obligation or liability in connection with this Warranty. No person, including Aston Martin employees or Dealers, can modify or waive any part of this Warranty.

a) Limitation of Remedies

Under this Warranty, it is agreed that the sole exclusive remedy against Aston Martin and its authorized Dealers shall be for the repair or replacement of defective parts as provided herein. The sole purpose of this exclusive remedy shall be to provide for the free repair and replacement of defective parts in the manner prescribed in this Warranty.

This exclusive remedy shall not be deemed to have failed its essential purpose so long as Aston Martin, through its authorized Dealers, is willing and able to repair or replace defective parts in the prescribed manner.

Aston Martin and its Dealers are not responsible to you for any time or income that you lose, any inconvenience you might be caused, the loss of your transportation or use of your vehicle, the cost of rental vehicles, fuel, telephone, travel, meals or lodging, the loss of personal or commercial property, the loss of revenue, or for any other incidental or consequential damages you may have.

Punitive, exemplary, or multiple damages can not be recovered unless applicable law prohibits their disclaimer.

You may not bring any warranty-related claim as a class representative, a private attorney general, a member of a class of claimants or in any other representative capacity.

Aston Martin shall not be liable for any damages caused by delay in delivery or furnishing of any products and /or services.

b) Implied Warranties and Consequential Damages

Under the law of some States, you as the owner may be entitled to the benefit of the implied warranties of merchantability or fitness for intended purpose. These implied warranties are limited to the extent allowed by law to the time period covered by the written warranties, or the applicable time period provided by State Law, whichever period is shorter.

Some States do not permit a limitation on how long an implied warranty will last, or on the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so the above limitation may not apply to you. This warranty gives owners specific legal rights, and they may also have other rights that vary from State to State.

3 New Vehicle Limited Warranty Statement

3.1

Aston Martin warrants that during the Warranty period, if an Aston Martin vehicle is correctly operated and maintained by the user in accordance with the Maintenance chapter of the Owner's Guide, repairs required to correct defects in materials or workmanship will be performed without charge; any component covered by this Warranty found to be defective in materials or workmanship, will be repaired, or replaced, without charge. Your Aston Martin Dealer will repair the vehicle with genuine approved Aston Martin parts.

3.2 Warranty Coverage

The New Vehicle Limited Warranty covers any original or OEM component of the Aston Martin vehicle that is defective during the basic Warranty period, with the exception of tires, the items listed under section 4.4, normal maintenance items and regularly scheduled maintenance parts and labor.

The Warranty includes any part scheduled for routine replacement during the Warranty period only if it is defective. If a part fails at the same time it is due for replacement it is not covered by the Warranty.

4 What is not Covered under the Warranties

4.1 Excluded Categories of Vehicle

The following categories of vehicle are excluded from the provisions of the Warranties:

- Vehicles sold for hire
- Vehicles used for motor sport, competition and track events (except Aston Martin organized and managed events)
- Vehicles that are incorrectly maintained

4.2 Damage Caused by Accident, Alteration or Misuse

The Warranties do not cover:

- Damage caused by collision, fire, flood, theft, freezing, vandalism, riot, explosion, or objects striking the vehicle
- Misuse of the vehicle, such as driving over curbs, overloading, racing, or using the vehicle as a stationary power source
- Alterations or modifications of the vehicle (including changes to the body, chassis, or components) carried out on the vehicle, at any time during its lifetime, by non-approved repairers or body repair centers and shops, tampering with the vehicle, tampering with the emission systems or with other parts that affect these systems

- Disconnection or alteration of the odometer, or where the actual mileage cannot be determined due to the odometer being inoperative for an extended period of time
- Use of contaminated or incorrect fuel or fluids or application of unauthorized chemicals by the customer

4.3 Damage Caused by Use or the Environment

Surface rust, deterioration and damage of paint, trim, upholstery and other appearance items that result from use and / or exposure to the elements are not covered under any of the Warranties.

The Warranties do not cover:

- Stone chips, scratches
- Lightning, hail damage
- Dints or dents
- Windstorm damage
- Road salt, tree sap
- Earthquake damage
- Bird and insect droppings
- Freezing, water or flood damage
- Cuts, burns, punctures or tears
- Windshield stress cracks
- Rodent damage
- Incorrect polishing of paint surface

4.4 Damage Caused by Failure to Maintain or Incorrect Maintenance

Damage caused by failure to maintain the vehicle, incorrect maintenance of the vehicle, or using the wrong fuel, oil, lubricants, or fluids is not covered under the Warranties. Refer to the Specifications chapter of the Owner's Guide for correct fluid levels, and for information on the correct ways to maintain your vehicle.

Examples of important maintenance procedures that need to be done correctly are:

- Oil changes
- Cleaning and polishing
- Oils, lubricants and other fluids

- Engine tune-up
- Oil & air filters
- Wiper blades
- Brake pads and lining
- Tire rotation, inflation
- Clutch linings
- Wheel alignments and tire balancing

4.5 Other Items and Conditions Not Covered by the Warranties

The Warranties do not cover:

- The installation or use of a non-Aston Martin part (other than a certified emissions part) or any part (Aston Martin or non-Aston Martin) designed for off-road use only installed after the vehicle leaves the control of Aston Martin, if the installed part fails or causes an Aston Martin part to fail
- Damage to, or caused by, non-approved accessories such as alarms, telephones
- Damage to, or caused by, non-approved snow chains or towing devices

- Damage caused by failure to maintain adequate levels of fuel in your vehicle
- Vehicles that have been labeled or branded as being ‘dismantled’, ‘fire’, ‘flood’, ‘junk’, ‘rebuilt’, ‘reconstructed’, ‘salvaged’ – this will void the Warranties
- Vehicles that have been determined as a ‘total loss’ by an insurance company, or other official body – this will void the Warranties
- Service adjustments, wear items and alignments after one (1) year or 10,000 miles (16,000 km), whichever occurs first
- Use of alternative fuels: Aston Martin does not recommend or approve of the use of Liquid Petroleum gas or Compressed Natural gas. Damage caused by the use of alternative fuels or fuel additives is not covered by the vehicle warranty

- Normal wear or worn out tires. Tires will not be replaced (unless required by a warranty repair) for wear or damage including a) tire damage from road hazard such as cuts, snags, bruises, bulges, puncture, and impact breaks; and b) tire damage due to under or over inflation, tire chain use, racing, spinning (including when stuck in snow or mud), incorrect mounting or dismounting, or tire repair
- Vehicles that have had the odometer disconnected, altered, or inoperative for an extended period of time with the result that the actual mileage cannot be determined.

4.6 Wear and tear Items

Items that are subject to wear and tear are generally divided into two categories, namely those specified for replacement or adjustment during scheduled maintenance and those that require replacement or adjustment dependent upon conditions of use.

a) Scheduled Maintenance Items

The items listed below are covered by the Vehicle Warranty up to the first scheduled change point that replacement or adjustment is required during scheduled maintenance operations.

- Drive Belts
- Spark Plugs
- Oil, air, pollen and fuel filters

 *The period of warranty cover for any item may not exceed the time and distance limitation of the vehicle warranty.*

b) Other Items

The items listed below are recognized as having a limited service life or are subject to wear or damage. However, these items are covered by the vehicle warranty for up to one year or the first service, which ever occurs first.

- Wiper Blades
- All Light bulbs

 *Xenon headlamp light bulbs and instrumentation light bulbs are covered by the full vehicle warranty.*

- Wheel alignment and balancing
- Adjustments, including but not limited to: headlamp and hinged panel adjustments, suspension tightening, steering geometry adjustments, emission and fuel systems checks and parking brake cable adjustments
- Remote transmitter batteries

 *Brake pads, brake rotors and other friction related components are not covered when replacement is due to wear and tear, but they are covered against manufacturing defects for the duration of the Vehicle Warranty.*

c) Consumables

Replacement or 'top-up' of consumable fluids, e.g. oils, anti-freeze, brake fluid, windshield wash solution and refrigerant, is only covered when they are used as part of a warranty repair.

5 Customer Satisfaction Campaigns

In order to maintain a high level of customer confidence and satisfaction with Aston Martin products, Aston Martin may periodically determine that certain service procedures are necessary, and will assume costs for same, in whole or in part, independent of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. When repairs to your vehicle are covered by the terms of one of these policy adjustments, your Aston Martin Dealer will advise you of the extent to which Aston Martin will pay either for parts, or for labor, or both.

If you have a question regarding a possible extra-Warranty adjustment, an authorized Aston Martin Dealer or Aston Martin can provide the details when the year, model and vehicle identification number (VIN) are supplied.

Aston Martin reserves the right to make modifications in vehicles manufactured or sold by them at any time without incurring any obligation to make the same or similar modifications in vehicles previously manufactured or sold by them.

6 Anti-Perforation Corrosion Warranty

The vehicle bodywork is protected by an Anti-Perforation Corrosion Warranty. Should any part of the bodywork of the Aston Martin motorcar be perforated the panel(s) affected by the perforation will be repaired or replaced.

The term 'perforation' means a hole that penetrates from the inner surface of a body panel or box section outwards.

A pre-condition of supporting this Warranty is an annual Dealer inspection (Refer to the Service chapter in the Owner's Guide).

7 Emissions Defect Warranty

7.1 Federal Requirements

Aston Martin provides coverage under the Emissions Defect Warranty (including labor and diagnosis) for repairs of emissions related parts which become defective on vehicles with the following years of service or mileage (whichever occurs first):

Parts	Years in Service	Mileage
Emissions Related Parts	3	36,000
Certain Emissions Parts _a	8	80,000

_{a.} Means the catalytic converter, the electronic emissions control unit (PCM) and / or the onboard emissions diagnostic device.

During the Warranty coverage period, Aston Martin warrants that:

- Your vehicle or engine is designed, built and equipped to meet (at the time it is sold) the applicable emissions regulations of the US Environmental Protection Agency (EPA)
- Your vehicle or engine is free from defects in factory-supplied Materials or workmanship that could prevent it from conforming with applicable EPA regulations
- You will not be charged for repair, replacement, or adjustment of defective Emissions Related Parts (defined under section 8.2 (What is Covered)).

8 Emissions Performance Warranty

8.1 Federal Requirements

If your vehicle is registered in a State where the State or Local Government has an EPA- approved inspection and maintenance program, any repairs which are required on your vehicle may also be covered under the Emissions Performance Warranty if your vehicle has the following years service or mileage (whichever occurs first) and if you meet certain conditions noted below:

Parts	Years in Service	Mileage
Emission Related Parts	2	24,000
Certain Emissions Parts _a	8	80,000

_{a.} Means the catalytic converter, the electronic emissions control unit (PCM) and / or the onboard emissions diagnostic device.

Under the Emissions Performance Warranty, Aston Martin will repair, replace, or adjust (with no charge for labor, diagnosis, or parts) any emissions control device or system, if you meet all of the following conditions:

- You have maintained and operated your vehicle according to the instructions on correct care and scheduled maintenance contained in the Owner's Guide
- Your vehicle fails to conform, during the warranty coverage period to the applicable national EPA standards, as determined by an EPA approved inspection and maintenance program
- You are subject to a penalty or sanction under local, State or Federal Law because your vehicle has failed to conform to the emissions standards (a penalty or sanction includes being denied the right to use your vehicle)

- Your vehicle has not been tampered with, misused, or abused
- The Emissions Performance Warranty will not apply to your vehicle if the diagnosis on your vehicle shows your vehicle will pass the applicable State or Local Government test using test procedures and standards set by the EPA.

8.2 What is Covered

If the following parts contain an emissions- related defect (an '**Emissions Related Part**') they will be covered by both the Emissions Defect Warranty (set out in section 7) and the Emissions Performance Warranty:

- Air and Fuel Feedback Control System and Sensor
- Air Induction System
- Altitude Compensation System
- Catalytic Converter
- Cold Start Enrichment System
- Controls for Deceleration
- Electronic Ignition System
- Electronic Engine Control Sensors and Switches
- Engine Coolant Thermostat Assembly
- Engine Control Module
- Evaporative Emission Control System
- Exhaust Gas Recirculation (EGR) Valve, Spacer, Plate and Associated Parts

- Exhaust Heat Control Valve
- Exhaust Manifold and gasket
- Fuel Filler Cap and Neck Restrictor
- Fuel Injection System
- Fuel Injector Supply Manifold
- Fuel Tank & Fuel Delivery Module
- Ignition Coil or Control Module
- Intake Manifold
- Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) System
- PCV System and Oil Filler Cap
- Secondary Air Injection Valve, Secondary Air Injection pump and Associated Parts
- Spark Control Components
- Spark Plugs and Ignition Coils and Wires

- Throttle Body Assembly
- Transmission Control Module
- Volume Air Flow Sensor

 *Some items and equipment in this list may not be installed to this vehicle and therefore may not be applicable.*

Also covered by the Emissions Defect Warranty and the Emissions Performance Warranty are all emissions-related bulbs, hoses, clamps, brackets, tubes, gaskets, seals, belts, connectors, and wiring harnesses that are used with components in the list of parts set out above.

8.3 Parts Replaced on Regular Maintenance Schedules

Parts that should be replaced on a certain recommended maintenance schedule, remain under warranty until, (a) the first replacement time that is specified under Service in your Owner's Guide or, (b) the time or mileage limits of the Federal Defect and Performance Warranties (whichever occurs first).

Aston Martin maintains a complete list of parts covered by Emissions Warranties. For more details about the specific parts covered by the Emissions Defect Warranty, contact Aston Martin or Aston Martin Lagonda of North America Inc.1.1 Warranty Communications

9 California Emissions Warranties

8.4 What is Not Covered

Aston Martin may deny you coverage under the Emissions Warranties if your vehicle or a part does not contain an emissions-related defect or has failed due to abuse, neglect, incorrect maintenance, unapproved modifications, or it concerns any items included in section 4 (What is not covered under the Warranties).

9.1 Your Warranty Rights and Obligations

This Warranty is applicable if your vehicle is both:

- (a) Registered in California, or other States adopting California emission and warranty regulations¹
- (b) Certified for sale in California as indicated on the vehicle emission control information label.

Aston Martin and the California Air Resources Board are pleased to explain the emission control system Warranty on your Aston Martin vehicle.

In California, new motor vehicles must be designed, built, and equipped to meet the State's stringent anti-smog standards.

Aston Martin must warrant the emission control system on your vehicle for the periods of time listed under the Manufactures' Warranty Coverage, provided there has been no abuse, neglect, or incorrect maintenance of your vehicle.

Your emission control system may include parts such as the fuel injection system, the ignition system, catalytic converter, and the engine computer. Also included may be hoses, belts, connectors, and other emissions-related assemblies.

Where a warrantable condition exists, Aston Martin will repair your vehicle at no cost to you including diagnosis, parts, and labor.

¹. Other States adopting California emissions and warranty regulations: Passenger car & light-duty trucks (up to 8,500 pounds GVWR) – California, Connecticut, Maine, Massachusetts, New Jersey, Oregon, Pennsylvania, Rhode Island, Vermont, Washington and any other States that adopt the California emissions and warranty regulations from time to time.

9.2 Manufacturer's Warranty Coverage

For vehicles eligible for coverage under the California Emissions Warranty, if your vehicle is:

a) Three years in service or has mileage of 50,000 mile (80,000 km) (whichever first occurs):

- If your vehicle fails a Smog Check inspection, all necessary repairs and adjustments will be made by Aston Martin to make sure that your vehicle passes the inspection. This is your **Emission Control System Performance Warranty**
- If an emission related part (as defined in section 9.4) on your vehicle is defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by Aston Martin. This is your **Short-Term Emission Control System Defects Warranty**

b) Seven years in service or has mileage of 70,000 mile (113,000 km) (whichever first occurs):

- If an emission related part (as defined in section 9.5) on your vehicle is defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by Aston Martin. This is your **Long-Term Emission Control System Defects Warranty**.

9.3 Owner's Warranty Responsibilities

As the vehicle owner or lessee, you are responsible for the performance of the required maintenance listed in the Owner's Guide. Aston Martin recommends that you retain all receipts covering maintenance on your vehicle, but Aston Martin cannot deny warranty coverage solely for the lack of receipts or for your failure to check the performance of all scheduled maintenance.

You are responsible for presenting your vehicle to an Aston Martin Dealer as soon as a problem exists. The warranty repairs should be completed in a reasonable amount of time, not to exceed 30 days.

Aston Martin may deny warranty coverage if your vehicle or a part has failed due to abuse, neglect, incorrect maintenance, or unapproved modifications. This includes without limitation, failure to maintain adequate levels of fuel in your vehicle.

If you have any questions regarding your warranty rights and / or responsibilities, or if you want to report what you believe to be violations of the terms of this Warranty, you may contact Aston Martin Lagonda of North America Inc. After Sales Department or the California Air Resources Board at:

State of California Air Resources Board
Mobile Source Operations Division
PO Box 8001
El Monte, California 91731-2990

9.4 What is Covered under the Short Term Emission Control System Defects Warranty

The parts in the following list are covered by Emission Control System Defects Warranties, which apply to every California model vehicle manufactured from, and including, 2004.

- Air and Fuel Feedback Control System and Sensor
- Air Induction System
- Altitude Compensation System
- Catalytic Converter
- Cold Start Enrichment System
- Controls for Deceleration
- Electronic Ignition System
- Electronic Engine Control Sensors and Switches
- Engine Coolant Thermostat Assembly
- Engine Control Module
- Evaporative Emission Control System
- Exhaust Gas Recirculation (EGR) Valve, Spacer, Plate and Associated Parts
- Exhaust Heat Control Valve
- Exhaust Manifold and gasket
- Fuel Filler Cap and Neck Restrictor
- Fuel Injection System
- Fuel Injector Supply Manifold
- Fuel Tank & Fuel Delivery Module

- Ignition Coil or Control Module
- Intake Manifold Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) System
- PCV System and Oil Filler Cap
- Secondary Air Injection Valve, Secondary Air Injection pump and Associated Parts
- Spark Control Components
- Spark Plugs and Ignition Coils and Wires
- Throttle Body Assembly
- Transmission Control Module
- Volume Air Flow Sensor

 Some items and equipment in this list may not be installed to this vehicle and therefore may not be applicable.

9.5 What is Covered under the Long Term Emission Control System Defects Warranty

Part Description	V8 Vantage	DB9 / DBS / Rapide
Camshaft Position Sensor	x	
Carbon Canister	x	x
Catalytic Converters	x	x
Engine Control Module	x	x
Exhaust Gas Oxygen Sensors	x	
Exhaust Manifolds	x	x
Fuel Delivery Module	x	x
Fuel Level Sender		x
Fuel Rail Assembly	x	x

Part Description	V8 Vantage	DB9 / DBS / Rapide
Fuel Tank	x	x
Inlet Manifold	x	
Rear Exhaust Muffler	x	x
Secondary Air Injection Hoses	x	
Secondary Air injection Pump	x	
Throttle Assembly	x	x

10 How do I get Service under the Emissions Warranties

To get service under your Emissions Warranties, take your vehicle to any Aston Martin Dealer as soon as possible after it has failed an EPA - approved test or a California Smog Check inspection. You must show the Dealer the document that states your vehicle has failed the test.

The Dealer will decide whether the repair is covered by the Warranty. If the Dealer cannot make a decision with regard to coverage under your Emissions Warranty, the Dealer shall forward the query to Aston Martin.

Aston Martin shall procure to make a final decision within 30 days after you bring your vehicle in for repair (The decision will be made within a shorter time if the law requires you to have the vehicle repaired more quickly in order to avoid additional penalties.).

However, if you request a delay, agree to a delay, or if a delay is caused by an event for which neither Aston Martin nor your Aston Martin Dealer is responsible, the deadline for determination does not have to be met by Aston Martin.

If a question about Emissions Warranty coverage is referred to Aston Martin, you will be notified by Aston Martin in writing if your claim for Emissions Warranty coverage is denied. The notice will explain the basis for denying your claim.

11 How do I handle Emergency Repairs to make sure they do not affect the Emissions Warranties

Aston Martin strives to make sure that services are available to conduct emergency repairs on your vehicle when necessary. However, occasionally, Aston Martin may not be able to perform emergency repairs for reasons outside of its control.

If your vehicle requires an emergency repair on Emission Related Parts and an Aston Martin Dealer is 'unavailable or unable to perform the necessary repairs' (defined below), you may, but only as a last resort, procure repairs by someone other than an authorized Aston Martin Dealer (a '**Third Party**').

If the Dealer or, failing a decision by the Dealer, Aston Martin, determines that such repair is covered under Warranty, Aston Martin will reimburse you for the cost of such repairs, including diagnosis.

Make sure that you obtain and take the following to your Aston Martin Dealer within 30 days of the repairs having been performed:

- a) The parts that are replaced, and
- b) A receipt for the work

The term 'unavailable or unable to perform the necessary repairs' means:

- If you have informed Aston Martin of the required emergency repairs and either Aston Martin or the Aston Martin Emergency Service roadside assistance service provider is unable to take your vehicle to an accessible authorized Aston Martin Dealer
- If an authorized Dealer is unable to perform the necessary repairs
- If an authorized Dealer does not have the warranted part required to perform the necessary repairs

Aston Martin shall only reimburse you if the repairs are conducted by a Third Party within 30 days from the time you first bring your vehicle to the Dealer for repairs and the time it is repaired by the Third Party.

Any repair that is not completed within the 30 day period may (at Aston Martin's discretion) constitute an emergency and any equivalent replacement part may be used in an emergency situation. If Aston Martin determines that the repair is covered under Warranty, Aston Martin will reimburse you for the repair expenses if:

- a) It does not exceed the Aston Martin's suggested retail price for all warranted parts that are replaced and
- b) The labor charges do not exceed the Aston Martin's recommended time allowance for the Warranty repair and the labor charges are reasonable and similar to those charged by a repairer of similar geographical location.

12 What Replacement Parts should I use

Aston Martin recommends that you use genuine Aston Martin replacement parts. However, when you are having non-Warranty work done on your vehicle, you may choose to use non-Aston Martin parts of equivalent specification.

If you decide to use non-Aston Martin parts, make sure that they are equivalent to Aston Martin parts in performance, quality and durability. If you use replacement parts that are not equivalent to Aston Martin parts, your vehicle's emissions control systems may not work as effectively, and you may jeopardize your Emissions Warranty coverage.



Federal Warranty Only: the maintenance, replacement, or repair of emissions control devices or systems, the cost of which is not covered by the Warranties, can be performed by any automotive repair establishment or individual using non-Aston Martin parts.

For vehicles within the Warranty period, Aston Martin will repair at no cost to the owner, under the Federal Emissions Warranty, covered emission failures caused by correctly installed Aston Martin parts or non-Aston Martin parts that have been 'certified' by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA). Aston Martin is not responsible for the cost of repairing any emission failures caused by non-Aston Martin parts that have not been 'certified' by the EPA.

13 Preserve Your Emissions Warranty

If you do not maintain your vehicle correctly, Aston Martin may have the right to deny you coverage under any of its Emissions Warranties. To have repairs made under the Emissions Warranties, you may be required to show that you have followed Aston Martin's instructions on correctly maintaining and using your vehicle, in accordance with the instructions set out in the Owner's Guide. Make sure that you save your service receipts and keep accurate records of any maintenance work performed.

If you are not satisfied with the handling of a Warranty matter, you may contact Aston Martin Lagonda of North America Inc.

If you need more information about getting service under the Federal Emissions Performance Warranty, or if you want to report what you believe to be violations of the terms of this Warranty, you may contact:

Director
Vehicle Program and Compliance Division (6505J)
Environmental Protection Agency
401 M Street, S.W.
Washington, DC 20460

14 Customer Satisfaction

If you are not satisfied with any Warranty repairs performed by an authorized Aston Martin Dealer and feel that you have a legitimate Warranty concern that is not being addressed to your satisfaction, follow the steps recommended below for the best resolution.

Step 1: Raise your concerns with the authorized Dealer Service Manager.

If you feel it would help clarify any concern, you should accompany the Service Manager on test drive of vehicle to demonstrate your issues and concerns. Often simply voicing your concerns directly to a manager or with the trained technician results in a satisfactory repair.

Step 2: If you are still not satisfied, contact dealership owner or General Manager.

Often raising an unresolved issue to a General Manager will benefit all involved and bring a focused effort from all parties involved.

Step 3: If you are still not satisfied, bring concerns to Aston Martin Lagonda of North America Inc. Regional After Sales Manager or Operations Manager.

All authorized Aston Martin Dealers have the contact details of the relevant After Sales and Operations Managers. Ask for the Aston Martin contact information and it will be gladly supplied.

Step 4: If you are still not satisfied, either:**a) Seek arbitration**

All disputes relating to the Warranty or the Extended Service Contract shall be resolved by binding arbitration under the Rules of Commercial Arbitration of the American Arbitration Association including its Supplementary Procedures for Consumer Related Disputes, before a single arbitrator who shall be bound by the terms of this Document. To maintain the highest quality of service and for staff training purposes, telephone calls to Aston Martin may be monitored and / or recorded.

b) If your dispute is in the State of California, contact the Better Business Bureau (BBB)

The BBB program is only in effect in the State of California, but steps one through three should be followed for quickest result.

As a final step to make sure that your concerns are being fairly considered, Aston Martin has agreed to participate in a dispute settlement program administered by the BBB, at no cost to the customer.

Refer to section 15 for further details of the BBB.

15 The Better Business Bureau Auto Line Program

(California only)

The Better Business Bureau (BBB) works with manufacturers and their customers in an attempt to reach a mutually acceptable resolution of any Warranty related concerns. If a Warranty concern has not been resolved using the three-step procedure outlined in Customer Satisfaction (Refer to page C.22), you may be eligible to participate in the BBB Auto Line Program.

The BBB Auto Line Program consists of two parts – mediation and arbitration. During mediation, a representative of the BBB will contact both you and Aston Martin to explore options for settlement of the claim.

If an agreement is not reached during mediation and your claim is eligible, you may participate in the arbitration process and the BBB will schedule an arbitration hearing so that you can present your case in an informal setting before an impartial person. The arbitrator will consider the testimony provided and make a decision after the hearing.

You are not bound by the decision, but should you choose to accept the BBB Auto Line decision, Aston Martin shall abide by the accepted decision as well.

Disputes submitted to the BBB Auto Line Program are usually decided within 40 days after you file your claim with BBB. If you wish to use the program and you qualify for participation, you will be required to provide the following information:

- Your name and address
- The vehicle identification number (VIN)
- The make, model and year of your vehicle
- A description of the problem with your vehicle

BBB AUTO LINE will also ask you for other information that may help resolve your concerns, such as the purchase price of your vehicle, the vehicle's current mileage, and copies of repair orders.

Upon receipt of such information, BBB will review the claim for eligibility under the Program Summary Guidelines.

You are required to resort to BBB AUTO LINE before exercising rights or seeking remedies under the Federal Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, 15 U.S.C. § 2301 et seq.

To the extent permitted by the applicable State 'Lemon Law', you are also required to resort to BBB AUTO LINE before exercising any rights or seeking remedies under the 'Lemon Law'. If you choose to seek remedies that are not created by the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act or the applicable State 'Lemon Law', you are not required to first use BBB AUTO LINE.

For more information about BBB AUTO LINE, including current eligibility standards, call 1-800-955-5100, visit the BBB website at www.lemonlaw.bbb.org, or write to the BBB at:

BBB AUTO LINE
4200 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 800
Arlington, VA 22203

16 State Warranty Enforcement Laws

These State laws (sometimes called ‘**lemon laws**’) allow owners to receive a replacement vehicle or a refund of the purchase price, under certain circumstances. The laws vary from State to State.

To the extent your State Law allows, Aston Martin requires that you first send us a written notification of any defects or non-conformities that you have experienced with your vehicle. This will give us the opportunity to make any necessary repairs before you pursue the remedies provided by your State’s law.

In other States, where not specifically required by State Law, Aston Martin requests that you send us written notification to:

National After Sales Manager
Aston Martin Lagonda of North America Inc.
9920 Irvine Center Drive
Irvine
CA 92618

17 Aston Martin Extended Service Contract

You may purchase an Aston Martin Extended Service Contract (**ESC**) which shall protect your vehicle for an extended period after the expiry of your New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

The ESC provides:

- a) Protection against covered repair costs¹
- b) Aston Martin Emergency Assistance roadside support
- c) Zero deductible, which means that you will not pay for covered repairs in the case of a legitimate claim
- d) 12 or 24 months coverage across the USA and Canada

¹. Wear items, neglect, force majeure and damage caused by outside influence are excluded, and shall be left to the sole discretion of Aston Martin.

Aston Martin offers various ESC products of varying levels of cover dependent upon the age and mileage of the vehicle. All vehicles must pass an Aston Martin multi-point inspection prior to the registration of an ESC on a vehicle.

Please note that the ESC Terms and Conditions shall apply. For a full list of the ESC Terms and Conditions, or if you would like to arrange such cover, talk to your nearest participating Aston Martin Dealer.

Owner Details

Name:

Address:

:

:

Zip Code:

Vehicle Details

Licence Plate No.

VIN No.

Engine No.

Warranty Start Date:

Signature:

Date:

(Dealer Stamp)

If the vehicle is sold, the benefits of any unexpired portion of the warranties can be transferred to the new owner.

The new owner should complete a 'tear off' sheet (next page) and send the new details to:

Aston Martin Warranty Department
Aston Martin Lagonda Limited
Banbury Road,
Gaydon,
WARWICK
Warwickshire,
CV35 0DB,
England



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN

Owner Details**Name:****Address:****Zip Code:****Vehicle Details****Registration No.:****VIN No.:****Engine no.:****Warranty Start Date**

Dealer Stamp

Signature.....Date.....

If the vehicle is sold, the benefits of any un-expired portion of the warranties can be transferred to the new owner.

The new owner should complete a 'tear off' sheet (next page) and send the new details to:

Aston Martin Warranty Department

Aston Martin Lagonda Limited

Banbury Road,

Gaydon,

WARWICK

Warwickshire,

CV35 0DB,

England

Owner Warranty Transfer (3)		Owner Warranty Transfer (2)		Owner Warranty Transfer (1)	
Registration No.:		Registration No.:		Registration No.:	
VIN No.:		VIN No.:		VIN No.:	
Recorded mileage: mile (km)		Recorded mileage: mile (km)		Recorded mileage: mile (km)	
Date of Purchase:		Date of Purchase:		Date of Purchase:	
Name:		Name:		Name:	
Address:		Address:		Address:	
Zip Code:		Zip Code:		Zip Code:	
Telephone No.:		Telephone No.:		Telephone No.:	
Signature		Signature		Signature	
Date		Date		Date	



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN

Owner Warranty Transfer (6)

Registration No.:	
VIN No.:	
Recorded mileage:	mile (km)
Date of Purchase:	
Name:	
Address:	
Zip Code:	
Telephone No.:	
Signature	Date

Owner Warranty Transfer (5)

Registration No.:	
VIN No.:	
Recorded mileage:	mile (km)
Date of Purchase:	
Name:	
Address:	
Zip Code:	
Telephone No.:	
Signature	Date

Owner Warranty Transfer (4)

Registration No.:	
VIN No.:	
Recorded mileage:	mile (km)
Date of Purchase:	
Name:	
Address:	
Zip Code:	
Telephone No.:	
Signature	Date



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN

Dealer Directory

	Contents
Australia.....	D.3
Austria.....	D.4
Belgium.....	D.4
Canada.....	D.4
Channel Islands.....	D.5
China.....	D.5
Croatia.....	D.6
Czech Republic.....	D.6
Denmark.....	D.6
England.....	D.7
France.....	D.10
Germany.....	D.10
Holland.....	D.13
Hong Kong.....	D.13
Italy.....	D.13
Japan.....	D.14
Middle East.....	D.15
Monaco.....	D.16
New Zealand.....	D.16
Northern Ireland.....	D.17
Norway.....	D.17
Portugal.....	D.17
Russia.....	D.18
Scotland.....	D.18
Singapore.....	D.18
South Africa.....	D.19
Spain.....	D.19
Switzerland.....	D.20
United States of America.....	D.20
Wales.....	D.26

This section lists all Aston Martin Dealers worldwide, where Sales and Service are provided by companies with the facilities, knowledge and factory trained personnel.

Every effort has been made to make sure that the information provided in the Dealer Directory is accurate and up-to-date. However changes amongst holders of the Aston Martin franchise may occur. Neither Aston Martin nor any listed Importer or Dealer shall in any circumstances be held liable for any inaccuracy, or the consequences thereof.

Dealers listed here all aim to conform to Aston Martin standards of excellence in both Sales and Service. However, all vehicles sold as Aston Martins are required to meet local legislation requirements.

Should service be required in a country other than that in which this vehicle was originally purchased, every effort will be made to meet the owner's requirements, but the availability of certain parts may be affected by differences in vehicle and component specifications. If the nearest Aston Martin Dealer is unable to help, contact Aston Martin directly:

Aston Martin Lagonda Limited

Banbury Road, Gaydon, WARWICK, CV35 0DB

Telephone: (+44) (0)1926 644300

Facsimile: (+44) (0)1926 644733

Web Site: www.astonmartin.com

E-Mail: enquiries@astonmartin.com

Aston Martin Dealers are independent traders, they are not the Company's Agents, and therefore have no authority to bind the Company or to enter into any financial or other commitments on the Company's behalf.

Only Aston Martin Dealers are authorised to carry out warranty work.

Australia

Adelaide

Solitaire Aston Martin

32 Belair Rd., Hawthorn, Adelaide, SA 5062

Telephone: (+61) 8 8152 5100

Facsimile: (+61) 8 8152 5120

Web Site: www.solitaire.com.au

E-Mail:

Perth

Barbagallo Aston Martin

354 Scarborough Beach Rd., Osborne Park, Perth, WA 6017

Telephone: (+61) 8 9231 5999

Facsimile: (+61) 8 9242 3717

Web Site: www.barbagallo.com.au

E-Mail: astonmartin@barbagallo.com.au

Queensland

Sunshine Aston Martin

179 Nerang Rd., Southport, Queensland, 4215

Telephone: (+61) 7 5582 7888

Facsimile: (+61) 7 5532 3361

Web Site: www.sunshineastonmartin.com.au

E-Mail: sales@sunshineastonmartin.com.au

Sydney

Trivett Classic Garage Pty. Ltd.

32–38 Yurong St., East Sydney, NSW 2010

Telephone: (+61) 2 8338 3993

Facsimile: (+61) 2 8338 2169

Web Site: www.astonmartinsydney.com.au

E-Mail: astonmartin@trivett.com.au

Victoria

Trivett Classic Aston Martin Melbourne

80 City Road, Southbank, Victoria 3006

Telephone: (+61) 3 8866 3111

Facsimile: (+61) 3 8866 3100

Web Site: www.astonmartinmelbourne.com.au

E-Mail: astonmartinmelbourne@trivett.com.au

Austria

Salzburg

Aston Martin Salzburg

Wasserfeldstraße 17a, 5020 Salzburg

Telephone: (+43) 662 887 8820

Facsimile: (+43) 662 887 882 88

Web Site: www.astonmartin.at

E-Mail: salzburg@astonmartin.at

Vienna

Aston Martin Wien

Motorcity SCS, Autoallee 7, 2334 Vosendorf b. Wien

Telephone: (+43) 1 698 1200 0

Facsimile: (+43) 1 698 1200 88

Web Site: www.astonmartin.at

E-Mail: wien@astonmartin.at

Belgium

Antwerp

Aston Martin Antwerp

Autolei 322, 2160 Wommelgem

Telephone: (+32) (0) 3 354 3856

Facsimile: (+32) (0) 3 354 5867

Web Site: www.astonmartin-antwerp.com

E-Mail: info@astonmartin-antwerp.com

Brussels

Aston Martin Brussels NV-SA

Borrestraat 23, St. Stevens-Woluwe, 1932

Telephone: (+32) (0) 2720 4345

Facsimile: (+32) (0) 2720 8474

Web Site: www.astonmartin-brussels.com

E-Mail: info@astonmartin-brussels.com

Canada

Alberta

Aston Martin Calgary

150 Glendee Circle SE, Calgary, Alberta, T2H 2V4

Telephone: (+1) 403 648 4755

Facsimile: (+1) 403 648 0056

Web Site: www.astonmartincalgary.ca

E-Mail:

British Columbia

MCL Motor Cars (1992) Inc.

1820 Burrard St., Vancouver, British Columbia, V6J 3H1

Telephone: (+1) 604 733 1820

Facsimile: (+1) 604 733 1828

Web Site: www.astonmartinvancouver.com

E-Mail: sales@mclmotorcars.com

Channel Islands

Ontario

Aston Martin of Ontario

740 Dupont St., Toronto, Ontario, M6G 1Z6

Telephone: (+1) 416 530 1880

Facsimile: (+1) 416 530 4495

Web Site: www.astonmartinofontario.com

E-Mail: sales@grandtouringautos.com

Quebec

Decarie Motors

8255 Bougainville, Montreal, Quebec, H4P 2T3

Telephone: (+1) 514 334 9910

Facsimile: (+1) 514 336 0548

Web Site: www.decarie.com

E-Mail: sales@decarie.com

Jersey

Jacksons (CI) Ltd.

La Rue Fondon, St. Peter, Jersey, JE3 7BF

Telephone: (+44) (0) 1534 497777

Facsimile: (+44) (0) 1534 497729

Web Site: www.jacksonsci.com

E-Mail: astonmartin@jacksons.je

Chile

Santiago

Aston Martin Santiago

Padre Hurtado Norte No. 1602, Vitacura, Santiago 7650191

Telephone:

Facsimile:

Web Site:

E-Mail:

China

Beijing

Aston Martin Beijing

No 1 Jing Gang Lu, Chao Yang District, 100018

Telephone: (+86) 10 8433 3007

Facsimile: (+86) 10 8433 3737

Web Site: www.astonmartin-china.com

E-Mail:

Shanghai

Aston Martin Shanghai

No 1 Hua Fu Tian Di, 222 Alley, Madang Lu, Luwan District

Telephone: (+86) 21 6387 6007

Facsimile: (+86) 21 6387 3007

Web Site: www.astonmartin-china.com

E-Mail:

Croatia

Zagreb

Aston Martin Zagreb

Radnička 37b, Zagreb

Telephone: (+385) 1 6410 500

Facsimile: (+385) 1 6410 501

Web Site: www.astommartinzagreb.hr

E-Mail: info@astonmartinzagreb.hr

Czech Republic

Prague

Aston Martin Prague

Ěeskomoravská 183, Prague

Telephone: (+420) 272 040 007

Facsimile: (+420) 284 680 115

Web Site: www.astonmartinpraha.cz

E-Mail: TBA

Denmark

Copenhagen

Aston Martin Denmark

Bryggervangen 39, PO 2630, DK-2100, Copenhagen Ø

Telephone: (+45) 369 00 945

Facsimile: (+45) 392 72 250

Web Site: www.aston-martin.dk

E-Mail: hsw@astonmartin.dk

England

Berkshire

Lancaster Reading

Bennet Rd., Reading, Berkshire, RG2 0QX

Telephone: (+44) (0)118 9658500

Facsimile: (+44) (0)118 9658501

Web Site: www.lancasterplc.com

E-Mail: astonmartin@reading.jardinemotors.co.uk

Buckinghamshire

Aston Martin Lagonda Limited

Works Service, Tickford St., Newport Pagnell, MK16 9AN

Telephone: (+44) (0)1908 619264

Facsimile: (+44) (0)1908 216439

Web Site: www.astonmartin.com

E-Mail: service2@astonmartin.com

Stratstone of Amersham

44 Woodside Rd., Amersham, Buckinghamshire, HP6 6AJ

Telephone: (+44) (0)1494 788360

Facsimile: (+44) (0)1494 788379

Web Site: www.stratstone.com

E-Mail: amershamastonmartin@stratstone.com

Cambridgeshire

Lancaster Cambridge

High St., Harston, Cambridge, CB22 7TN

Telephone: (+44) (0)870 410 3848

Facsimile: (+44) (0)1223 875675

Web Site: www.lancasterplc.com

E-Mail: astonmartin@cambridge.jardinemotors.co.uk

Cheshire**Stratstone of Wilmslow**

Water Lane, Wilmslow, SK9 5BQ

Telephone: (+44) (0)1625 548802

Facsimile: (+44) (0)1625 526873

Web Site: www.stratstone.comE-Mail: wilmslowastonmartin@stratstone.com**Derbyshire****Stratstone Aston Martin Derby**

Sir Frank Whittle Rd., Derby, DE21 4LT

Telephone: (+44) (0)1332 258796

Facsimile: (+44) (0)1332 258799

Web Site: www.stratstone.comE-Mail: derbyastonmartin@stratstone.com

Devon**Grange of Exeter**

Yeoford Way, Exeter, EX2 8LB

Telephone: (+44) (0)1392 678044

Facsimile: (+44) (0)1392 678048

Web Site: www.grange.co.ukE-Mail: grangeastonmartinexeter@grange.co.uk**Essex****Grange of Brentwood**

2 Brook St., Brentwood, CM14 5LU

Telephone: (+44) (0)1277 249555

Facsimile: (+44) (0)1277 249556

Web Site: www.grange.co.ukE-Mail: grangeastonmartin.brentwood@summitautogroup.co.uk

Gloucestershire**Broughtons Aston Martin**

Rutherford Way, Cheltenham, GL51 9SQ

Telephone: (+44) (0)1242 232667

Facsimile: (+44) (0)1242 232668

Web Site: www.broughtons.co.ukE-Mail: info@broughtonsastonmartin.co.uk**Hertfordshire****Grange of Welwyn**

Great North Rd., Stanborough, Welwyn Garden City AL8 7TQ

Telephone: (+44) (0)1707 280868

Facsimile: (+44) (0)1707 280869

Web Site: www.grange.co.uk

E-Mail:

Kent

Lancaster Sevenoaks

114 - 115 London Rd., Sevenoaks, TN13 2DN

Telephone: (+44) (0)844 668 0138

Facsimile: (+44) (0)1732 465566

Web Site: www.lancasterastonmartin.co.uk

E-Mail: astonmartin@sevenoaks.jardinemotors.co.uk

London

Stratstone of Mayfair

Brook House, Park Lane, London, W1K 7AJ

Telephone: (+44) (0)20 7235 8888

Facsimile: (+44) (0)20 7629 5376

Web Site: www.stratstone.com

E-Mail: mayfairastonmartin@stratstone.com

Norfolk

Stratton Motor Company (Norfolk) Limited

Ipswich Rd., Long Stratton, Norwich, NR15 2XJ

Telephone: (+44) (0)1508 530491

Facsimile: (+44) (0)1508 531670

Web Site: www.strattonmotorcompany.com

E-Mail: astonsales@strattonmotorcompany.com

Surrey

HWM Aston Martin

New Zealand Ave., Walton on Thames, KT12 1AT

Telephone: (+44) (0)1932 233196

Facsimile: (+44) (0)1932 225440

Web Site: www.hwmastonmartin.co.uk

E-Mail: sales@hwm.co.uk

Tyne and Wear

Stratstone Tyne and Wear

Stoneygate, Houghton le Spring, Tyne and Wear, DH4 4NJ

Telephone: (+44) (0)191 512 3512

Facsimile: (+44) (0)191 512 3509

Web Site: www.stratstone.com

E-Mail:

West Midlands

Stratstone Aston Martin Hagley

94-96 Kidderminster Rd., Hagley, DY9 0QL

Telephone: (+44) (0) 1562 888 380

Facsimile: (+44) (0) 1562 888 382

Web Site: www.stratstone.com

E-Mail: birminghamastonmartin@stratstone.com

France

West Sussex

Harwoods Aston Martin

Terminus Rd., Chichester, PO19 8TX

Telephone: (+44) (0)1243 836500

Facsimile: (+44) (0)1243 836525

Web Site: www.harwoods.uk.com/astonmartin

E-Mail: infoasm@harwoods.uk.com

West Yorkshire

JCT 600 Aston Martin Brooklands

Ring Road, Lower Wortley, Leeds, LS12 6AA

Telephone: (+44) (0) 844 844 3101

Facsimile: (+44) (0)1133 890778

Web Site: www.jct600.co.uk

E-Mail: astonmartin.sales@jct600.co.uk

Bordeaux

Auto Performance Bordeaux

114 Avenue JF Kennedy, 33700 Mérignac

Telephone: (+33) 5 56 16 21 00

Facsimile: (+33) 5 56 16 21 01

Web Site: www.astonmartinbordeaux.com

E-Mail: contact@astonmartinbordeaux.com

Cannes

Royal Motors Cannes

1390 Ave. du Campon, 06110 Cannes

Telephone: (+33) 4 93 94 84 84

Facsimile: (+33) 4 92 18 16 01

Web Site: www.aston-martin-cannes.com

E-Mail: commercial@royal-motor.com

Lyon

Auto Performance Lyon

5, Avenue du Maréchal Foch, 69006 LYON

Telephone: (+33) (0) 4 37 48 07 07

Facsimile: (+33) (0) 4 37 48 07 08

Web Site: www.astonmartinlyon.com

E-Mail: contact@astonmartinlyon.com

Paris

Auto Performance Paris

25 Ave. Franklin D Roosevelt, 75008 Paris

Telephone: (+33) 1 40 75 20 85

Facsimile: (+33) 1 40 75 20 86

Web Site: www.astonmartinparis.com

E-Mail: contact@astonmartinparis.com

Germany

Aachen

Hauswirth Exclusive Cars GMBH

Europaplatz 17-19, 52068 Aachen

Telephone: (+49) 241 16604 22

Facsimile: (+49) 241 16604 41

Web Site: www.astonmartin-aachen.de

E-Mail: info@astonmartin-aachen.de

Allgäu

Aston Martin Allgäu

Teramostraße 40, 87700

Telephone: (+49) 8331 974450

Facsimile: (+49) 8331 97445 - 15

Web Site: www.astonmartin-allgaeu.de

E-Mail: info@astonmartin-allgaeu.de

Berlin

Krauthahn Berlin

Nestorstraße 27–29, 10709 Berlin

Telephone: (+49) 30 89 60 000

Facsimile: (+49) 30 89 31 667

Web Site: www.krauthahn-berlin.de

E-Mail: service@krauthahn-berlin.de

Bremen

Tamsen GMBH

Hauptstraße 55 (B 51), 28816 Stuhr, Bremen

Telephone: (+49) 421 80 95 80

Facsimile: (+49) 421 80 95 840

Web Site: www.tamsen.de

E-Mail: info@tamsen.de

Cologne

Royal Motors Kempen GMBH

Raderthalgürtel 2, 50968 Cologne

Telephone: (+49) 2 21 9347 800

Facsimile: (+49) 2 21 380 488

Web Site: www.astonmartin-koeln.de

E-Mail: info@astonmartin.koeln.de

Dortmund

Aston Martin Dortmund

Hannoversche Straße 44, 44143 Dortmund

Telephone: (+49) 231 91 20 4067

Facsimile: (+49) 231 91 20 4049

Web Site: www.premiumcars-peters.de

E-Mail:

Dresden**Thomas Exclusive Cars GMBH**

Meissner Straße 34, 01445 Radebeul

Telephone: (+49) 351 404 6420

Facsimile: (+49) 351 404 6410

Web Site: www.astonmartin-dresden.deE-Mail: info@astonmartin-dresden.de**Düsseldorf****Aston Martin Düsseldorf**

Willstatterstr. 45, 40549 Düsseldorf

Telephone: (+49) 211 9446 01

Facsimile: (+49) 211 9446 1730

Web Site: www.astonmartin-duesseldorf.deE-Mail: info@astonmartin-duesseldorf.de

Frankfurt**Aston Martin Kronberg**

Frankfurter Straße, 61476 Kronberg T/S, Frankfurt

Telephone: (+49) 6173 999680

Facsimile: (+49) 6173 64873

Web Site: www.astonmartin-kronberg.de

E-Mail:

Hamburg**Tamsen GMBH**

Merkurring 2, 22143 Hamburg

Telephone: (+49) 405 700 3000

Facsimile: (+49) 405 700 3040

Web Site: www.tamsen.deE-Mail: info@tamsen.de

Hannover**Aston Martin Hannover**

Podbielskistrasse 322, 30655 Hannover

Telephone: (+49) 511 897 8890

Facsimile: (+49) 511 358 55-66

Web Site: www.kamps-hannover.deE-Mail: kamps-hannover@kamps-gruppe.de**Mannheim****Kroymans Autohaus Mannheim GMBH**

Saarburger Ring 19–21, 68229 Mannheim

Telephone: (+49) 621 48380 0

Facsimile: (+49) 621 48380 99

Web Site: www.kroymans-mannheim.de

E-Mail:

Holland

Mannheim

Kroymans Autohaus Mannheim GMBH

Saarburger Ring 19–21, 68229 Mannheim

Telephone: (+49) 621 48380 0

Facsimile: (+49) 621 48380 99

Web Site: www.kroymans-mannheim.de

E-Mail:

München

Aston Martin München

Odeonsplatz 2, 80539 München

Telephone: (+49) 89 287 0120

Facsimile: (+49) 89 287 012 22

Web Site: www.astonmartin-muenchen.de

E-Mail:

Stuttgart

Aston Martin Stuttgart

Cannstatter Straße 46, 70190 Stuttgart

Telephone: (+49) 711 2803 3600

Facsimile: (+49) 711 2803 3615

Web Site: www.astonmartin-stuttgart.de

E-Mail:

Eindhoven

Cito Motors B.V.

Huizingalaan 66, 5628 CM Eindhoven

Telephone: (+31) 40 29 01 110

Facsimile: (+31) 40 24 14 956

Web Site: www.citomotors.nl

E-Mail: info@astonmartineindhoven.nl

Hilversum

Kroymans Aston Martin B.V.

Soestdijkerstraatweg 66, 1213 XE Hilversum

Telephone: (+31) 35 646 2230

Facsimile: (+31) 35 683 5646

Web Site: www.astonmartin.nl

E-Mail: info@astonmartin.nl

Hong Kong

MF Jebsen Automotive Ltd.

G/F., 196-200 Tsz Tsz Mui Rd., North Point, Hong Kong

Telephone: (+852) 2366 2017

Facsimile: (+852) 2191 9117

Web Site: www.mfjebsen.com

E-Mail: automotive@mfjebsen.com

Italy

Bologna

EmilianAuto Spa.

Via de Carracci 6, 40131 Bologna

Telephone: (+39) 0 51 638 2111

Facsimile: (+39) 0 51 638 2202

Web Site: www.astonmartinbologna.it

E-Mail: info@astonmartinbologna.it

Milano

Aston Martin Milano S.R.L.

Via Monte Rosa, 91, 20149 Milano

Telephone: (+39) 02 43510988

Facsimile: (+39) 02 42511652

Web Site: www.astonmartinmilano.it

E-Mail: info@astonmartinmilano.it

Padova

Aston Martin Padova S.R.L.

Via Nona Strada, 23/L, 35129 Padova

Telephone: (+39) 049 807 9516

Facsimile: (+39) 049 807 9464

Web Site: www.astonmartinpadova.it

E-Mail: info@astonmartinpadova.it

Rome

Aston Martin Roma

Via F. Siacci 44, 00197 Rome

Telephone: (+39) 06808 2487

Facsimile: (+39) 06808 2415

Web Site: www.astonmartinroma.it

E-Mail: info@astonmartinroma.it

Japan

Nagoya

Aston Martin Nagoya Hakko

2-44-20 Shinsakae, Naka-ku, Nagoya 460-0007

Telephone: (+81) (0)52 242 0888

Facsimile: (+81) (0)52 242 0878

Web Site: www.astonmartin-nagoya.com

E-Mail: astonmartin-nagoyaa@hakko-group.co.jp

Osaka

Aston Martin Osaka Hakko

1-19-1 Kitahorie, Nishi-ku, Osaka 550-0014

Telephone: (+81) (0)6 6531 0078

Facsimile: (+81) (0)6 6531 0118

Web Site: www.astonmartin-osaka.co.jp

E-Mail: astonmartin-osaka@hakko-group.co.jp

Tokyo

Aston Martin Akasaka

Akasaka Showroom, 4-9-25 Akasaka, Minato-ku, Tokyo 107-0052

Telephone: (+81) (0)3 5411 2332

Facsimile: (+81) (0)3 3479 0774

Web Site: www.astonmartin-akasaka.com

E-Mail: info@astonmartin-akasaka.com

Atlantic Cars Limited

2-3-3 Azabudai, Minato-ku, Tokyo 106-0041

Telephone: (+81) (0)3 3583 8611

Facsimile: (+81) (0)3 3583 8613

Web Site: www.astonmartin.co.jp

E-Mail: atlantic_cars@astonmartin.co.jp

Middle East

Al-Khobar

Haji Hussein Alireza

King Faisal Rd., PO Box 269, Al-Khobar

Telephone: (+966) 3 887 8087

Facsimile: (+966) 3 887 9690

Web Site: www.hha.com.sa

E-Mail: contact@hha.com.sa

Bahrain

Montana Motors

PO Box 28070, Riffa

Telephone: (+973) 1 766 9999

Facsimile: (+973) 1 766 8888

Web Site: www.montanamotors.com

E-Mail: montana@batelco.com.bh

Beirut**Mana Automotive S.A.L.**

Aston Martin & Land Rover Building, Chouran, Unesco, Verdun,
PO Box 11–5800, Beirut

Telephone: (+961) 1 771000

Facsimile: (+961) 1 785205

Web Site:

E-Mail: astonmartin@tewtelgroup.com

Doha**Horizon Automobiles**

PO Box 37554

Telephone: (+974) 594 4111

Facsimile: (+974) 458 2444

Web Site:

E-Mail:

Dubai**Al Habtoor Motors Co. (LLC)**

Al Ittihad Rd, Dubai

Telephone: (+971) 4 295 6232

Facsimile: (+971) 4 294 4422

Web Site:

E-Mail:

Jeddah**Haji Hussein Alireza**

PO Box 40, Jeddah 21411

Telephone: (+966) 2 642 3509

Facsimile: (+966) 2 642 6435

Web Site: www.hha.com.sa

E-Mail: contact@hha.com.sa

Kuwait**Premier International Motors Group Co WLL**

Alghazali Road, PO Box 5963, Safat

Telephone: (+965) 1824242

Facsimile: (+965) 22324811

Web Site:

E-Mail: info@astonmartin-kuwait.com

Riyadh**Haji Hussein Alireza**

PO Box 87106

Telephone: (+966) 1 493 4444

Facsimile: (+966) 1 493 6443

Web Site: www.hha.com.sa

E-Mail: contact@hha.com.sa

Monaco

Monte Carlo

British Motors SAM

15 Blvd. Princesse Charlotte, 98000 Monte Carlo

Telephone: (+377) 97 978 978

Facsimile: (+377) 97 978 989

Web Site: www.aston-martin-monaco.com

E-Mail: british-motors@british-motors.mc

New Zealand

Auckland

Independent Prestige Limited

150 Great North Rd., Grey Lynn, Auckland

Telephone: (+64) (0) 9 360 3202

Facsimile: (+64) (0) 9 361 6403

Web Site: www.astonmartin.co.nz

E-Mail: sales@iprestige.co.nz

Northern Ireland

Antrim

Charles Hurst Limited

62 Boucher Rd., Belfast, BT12 6LR

Telephone: (+44) (0) 28 9038 1721

Facsimile: (+44) (0) 28 9066 2355

Web Site: www.charleshurstgroup.co.uk

E-Mail:

Norway

Oslo

As Insignia

Sofienberggaten 35, N-0558 Oslo

Telephone: (+47) 2323 3377

Facsimile: (+47) 2323 3301

Web Site: www.insignia.no

E-Mail:

Poland

Warszawa

Aston Martin Warszawa

03-910 Warszawa, Waszyngtona 50

Telephone:

Facsimile:

Web Site:

E-Mail:

Portugal

Lisbon

AML Sport S.A. Lisboa

Rua António Enes 21 A, 1050-023 Lisbon

Telephone: (+351) 21 31 47 731

Facsimile: (+351) 21 31 92 389

Web Site:

E-Mail:

Porto

AML Sport, S.A

Rua Delfim Ferreira, 424-460, 4100-199 Porto

Telephone: (+351) 226 158 620

Facsimile: (+351) 226 158 639

Web Site:

E-Mail:

Russia

Moscow

Aston Martin Moscow

1, Kutuzovsky prospect, Moscow 121248

Telephone: (+7) 495 229 0007

Facsimile: (+7) 495 258 1667

Web Site: www.astonmartin.ru

E-Mail: info@astonmartin.ru

Scotland

Lothian

Murray Motor Company

6 Bankhead Drive, Sighthill, Edinburgh, EH11 4DJ

Telephone: (+44) (0) 131 442 2800

Facsimile: (+44) (0) 131 468 7219

Web Site: www.murrayastonmartin.co.uk

E-Mail: murraymotorco@jmggroup.co.uk

Singapore

Aston Martin Lagonda (SEA) PTE Ltd.

Number 1, Tuas Basin Link, Singapore 638755

Telephone: (+65) 6862 5868

Facsimile: (+65) 6862 5388

Web Site: www.astonmartin.com.sg

E-Mail: enquiries@astonmartin.com.sg

South Africa

Cape Town

Aston Martin Cape Town

The V & A Waterfront, Corner Dock Rd. and Breakwater Blvd., Cape Town 8002

Telephone: (+27) 21 425 2007

Facsimile: (+27)

Web Site:

E-Mail:

Johannesburg

Aston Martin Sandton

Sandton Isle, Corner Rivonia and Linden Rd., Sandton 2196

Telephone: (+27) 11 301 7100

Facsimile: (+27) 11 301 7101

Web Site:

E-Mail: info@astonmartin.co.za

Spain

Barcelona

Aston Martin Barcelona

Roger de Llúria, 115, 08037 Barcelona

Telephone: (+34) 93 215 21 70

Facsimile: (+34) 93 215 21 74

Web Site: www.astonbcn.com

E-Mail: ventas.astonmartin@quadis.es

Madrid

C. de Salamanca SA

Zurbano, 93–95, 28003 Madrid

Telephone: (+34) 91 554 8293

Facsimile: (+34) 91 553 5206

Web Site: www.cdesalamanca.com

E-Mail: ventas.zb@cdesalamanca.com

Marbella

C. de Salamanca SA

Carretera de Cádiz, KM 171, San Pedro de Alcántara, 29670 Marbella

Telephone: (+34) 952 78 52 50

Facsimile: (+34) 952 78 03 66

Web Site: www.cdesalamanca.com

E-Mail: ventas1.spedro@cdesalamanca.com

Valencia

Aston Martin Valencia

Calle Ibiza, 1, 46023 Valencia

Telephone: (+34) 96 331 98 08

Facsimile: (+34) 96 331 98 14

Web Site: www.astonmartinvalencia.com

E-Mail: ventas.astonmartin@quadis.es

Sweden

Stockholm

Aston Martin Stockholm

Rinkebyvagen 9, S-182 36, Danderyd, Stockholm

Telephone:

Facsimile:

Web Site:

E-Mail:

Switzerland

Geneva

Keller Motorcars Geneva

Rue du Grand Pré 2, 1202 Geneva

Telephone: (+41) 22 919 0500

Facsimile: (+41) 22 919 0509

Web Site: www.kellermotorcars.ch

E-Mail: geneve@kellermotorcars.ch

Lugano

Garage Tarcisio Pasta SA

Via Monteceneri 1, 6593 Cadenazzo

Telephone: (+41) (0) 91 850 2024

Facsimile: (+41) (0) 91 850 2021

Web Site: www.tpasta.ch

E-Mail: astonmartin@tpasta.ch

Safenwil

Emil Frey AG

Autocenter Safenwil, Industrie Nord, 5745 Safenwil

Telephone: (+41) 62 788 8807

Facsimile: (+41) 62 788 84 33

Web Site: www.astonmartin.ch

E-Mail: astonmartin-safenwil@emilfrey.ch

Zurich

Emil Frey AG

Badenerstrasse 600, 8048 Zurich

Telephone: (+41) (0) 44 495 2515

Facsimile: (+41) (0) 44 495 2305

Web Site: www.astonmartin.ch

E-Mail: astonmartin@emilfrey.ch

Taiwan

Taipei

Aston Martin Taipei

Telephone: (+886) 2 2836 8899

Facsimile: (+886) 2 2835 8899

Web Site:

E-Mail:

United States of America

Arizona

Aston Martin Scottsdale

6825 East McDowell Rd., Scottsdale, AZ 85257

Telephone: (+1) 480 421 7240

Facsimile: (+1) 480 421 3805

Web Site: www.astonmartinscottsdale.com

E-Mail:

California

Aston Martin Marin

195 Casa Buena Drive, Corte Madera, CA 94925

Telephone: (+1) 415 496 2100

Facsimile: (+1) 415 496 2170

Web Site: www.astonmartinmarin.com

E-Mail:

Aston Martin of Beverly Hills

8833 West Olympic Blvd., Beverly Hills, CA 90211

Telephone: (+1) 310 659 4050

Facsimile: (+1) 310 625 9656

Web Site: www.astonmartinbeverlyhills.com

E-Mail:

Aston Martin of Newport Beach

1540 Jamboree Rd., CA 92660

Telephone: (+1) 949 999 5500

Facsimile: (+1) 949 999 5501

Web Site: www.amofoc.com

E-Mail: sales@amofoc.com

Aston Martin of San Diego

5202 Kearney Mesa Rd., San Diego, CA 92111

Telephone: (+1) 858 541 0200

Facsimile: (+1) 858 541 7696

Web Site: www.astonmartinofsandiego.com

E-Mail:

Aston Martin Silicon Valley

66 East Main St., Los Gatos, CA 95030

Telephone: (+1) 408 354 4000

Facsimile: (+1) 408 354 6285

Web Site: www.astonmartinsiliconvalley.com

E-Mail:

Desert European

71–387 Highway 111, Rancho Mirage, CA 92270

Telephone: (+1) 760 773 5000

Facsimile: (+1) 760 773 4406

Web Site: www.deserteuropean.com

E-Mail:

Galpin Aston Martin

15500 Roscoe Blvd., Van Nuys, CA 91406

Telephone: (+1) 818 894 3800

Facsimile: (+1) 818 922 3668

Web Site: www.galpinastonmartin.com

E-Mail:

Colorado**Sill-Terhar Aston Martin**

PO Box 344, Broomfield, Denver, CO 80038

Telephone: (+1) 303 469 1801

Facsimile: (+1) 720 284 0792

Web Site: www.sthmotors.com

E-Mail:

Connecticut**Miller Motorcars Inc.**

275 West Putnam Ave., Greenwich, CT 06830

Telephone: (+1) 203 629 4726

Facsimile: (+1) 203 629 3418

Web Site: www.millermotorcars.com

E-Mail:

Florida**Aston Martin Naples**

850 Tamiami Trail North, Naples, FL 34102

Telephone: (+1) 866 603 6020

Facsimile: (+1) 239 262 2848

Web Site: www.astonmartinnaples.com

E-Mail:

Aston Martin Orlando

4249 Millenia Blvd, Orlando, FL 32839

Telephone: (+1) 407 472 4880

Facsimile: (+1) 407 472 4899

Web Site: www.astonmartinorlando.com

E-Mail:

Aston Martin of Tampa Bay

320 East Fletcher Ave., Tampa, FL 33612

Telephone: (+1) 813 371 8200

Facsimile: (+1) 813 371 8182

Web Site: www.astonmartinoftampa.com

E-Mail: info@astonmartinoftampa.com

Aston Martin Palm Beach

915 South Dixie Highway, West Palm Beach, FL 33401

Telephone: (+1) 561 659 6206

Facsimile: (+1) 561 832 7176

Web Site: www.palmbeachmotorcars.com

E-Mail:

The Collection

200 Bird Rd., Coral Gables, FL 33146

Telephone: (+1) 305 476 2050

Facsimile: (+1) 786 924 5516

Web Site: www.thecollection.com

E-Mail:

Georgia

Aston Martin of Atlanta

11875 Alpharetta Highway, Roswell, GA 30076

Telephone: (+1) 678 802 5007

Facsimile: (+1) 678 802 5019

Web Site: www.astonmartinofatlanta.com

E-Mail:

Illinois

Lake Forest Sports Cars Limited

990 North Shore Drive, Lake Bluff, IL 60044

Telephone: (+1) 847 295 6560

Facsimile: (+1) 847 295 8849

Web Site: www.ifsc.com

E-Mail: sales@ifsc.com

Massachusetts

Aston Martin of New England

85 Linden St., Waltham, MA 02452

Telephone: (+1) 781 547 5959

Facsimile: (+1) 781 547 5957

Web Site: www.astonmartin-lotus.com

E-Mail: lotusmotor@aol.com

Michigan

Aston Martin of Troy

1767 Maplawn, Troy, MI 48084

Telephone: (+1) 248 643 6900

Facsimile: (+1) 248 643 9261

Web Site: www.astonmartinoftroy.com

E-Mail: info@astonmartinoftroy.com

Missouri

Moore Aston Martin

14116 Manchester Rd., St. Louis, MO 63011

Telephone: (+1) 800 524 7278

Facsimile: (+1) 636 779 2024

Web Site: www.moorejaguar.com

E-Mail:

Nevada

Gaudin Aston Martin of Las Vegas

7200 West Sahara Ave., Las Vegas, NV 89117

Telephone: (+1) 702 284 7000

Facsimile: (+1) 702 221 4422

Web Site: www.jplv.net

E-Mail:

New Jersey

F.C. Kerbeck Aston Martin

100 Route 73 North, Palmyra, NJ 08065

Telephone: (+1) 856 829 8200

Facsimile: (+1) 856 829 7009

Web Site: www.fckerbeck.com

E-Mail: info@fckerbeck.net

Ray Catena Aston Martin

910 US Route 1, Edison, NJ 08817

Telephone: (+1) 732 205 9000

Facsimile: (+1) 732 205 9101

Web Site: www.raycatena-astonmartin.com

E-Mail:

New York

Aston Martin Long Island

Aston Martin Long Island Sales, 1060 Northern Blvd., Roslyn, NY 11576

Telephone: (+1) 516 478 4326

Facsimile: (+1) 516 478 4327

Web Site: www.astonmartinlongisland.com

E-Mail:

North Carolina

Aston Martin of Charlotte

416 Tyvola Rd., Charlotte, NC 28217

Telephone: (+1) 704 535 7100

Facsimile: (+1) 704 536 1777

Web Site: www.fcicharlotte.com

E-Mail:

Foreign Cars Aston Martin

5603 Roanne Way, Greensboro, NC 27409

Telephone: (+1) 336 294 0200

Facsimile: (+1) 336 294 9109

Web Site: www.foreigncarsitalia.com

E-Mail:

Ohio

Midwestern Auto Group

6335 Perimeter Loop Rd., Dublin, OH 43017

Telephone: (+1) 614 889 2571

Facsimile: (+1) 614 793 7971

Web Site: www.magastonmartin.com

E-Mail:

Texas

Aston Martin of Austin

12989 Research Blvd., Austin, TX 78750

Telephone: (+1) 512 918 1007

Facsimile: (+1) 512 249 9477

Web Site: www.astonmartinofaustin.com

E-Mail:

Aston Martin Dallas

5333 Lemmon Ave., Dallas, TX 75209

Telephone: (+1) 214 522 1007

Facsimile: (+1) 214 353 3550

Web Site: www.astonmartindallas.com

E-Mail:

Star Motor Cars

7000 Katy Rd., Houston, TX 77024

Telephone: (+1) 713 868 6813

Facsimile: (+1) 713 868 6814

Web Site: www.starmotorcarsastonmartin.com

E-Mail: amsales@starmotors.com

Wales

Virginia

Aston Martin Tysons

8545 Leesbueg Pike, Vienna, VA 22182

Telephone: (+1) 571 216 8244

Facsimile: (+1) 703 564 6345

Web Site: www.astonmartintysons.com

E-Mail:

Washington

Park Place Aston Martin

13710 NE 20th St., Bellevue, WA 98005

Telephone: (+1) 425 562 1000

Facsimile:

Web Site: www.parkplaceastonmartin.com

E-Mail:

South Glamorgan

Stratstone Cardiff

Cambria House, 156 North Rd., Cardiff, CF14 3BH

Telephone: (+44) (0) 2920 695700

Facsimile: (+44) (0) 2920 695718

Web Site: www.stratstone.com

E-Mail: cardiffastonmartin@stratstone.com



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN

Approved Repair Centres

		Contents
Australia.....	E.2	Hong Kong..... E.9
Austria	E.3	Italy..... E.9
Belgium	E.3	Japan
Canada	E.3	Kuwait
China	E.4	Lebanon..... E.11
Denmark.....	E.4	Monaco
Dubai	E.4	Netherlands
England.....	E.5	New Zealand
France.....	E.8	Northern Ireland
Germany.....	E.8	Norway..... E.13
		Portugal
		Russia..... E.13
		Saudi Arabia..... E.14
		Singapore..... E.14
		South Africa
		Spain..... E.15
		Switzerland
		USA
		Scotland..... E.18

All Aston Martin Approved Repair Centres have been assessed and audited to Aston Martin Body Repair Centre standards in either Category A or B.

Category A - Repairs to the bonded aluminium structure and all paint related and light structural damage.

Category B - All paint related and light structural damage.

Australia

Cat A

Exclusive Body Werks

23 George Street, Granville, Sydney, New South Wales 2142
Phone: +61 2 9760 0353
Associated Dealer: Trivett Classic Garage Pty Ltd.

Cat B

File Finish

180 Christmas St., Fairfield, VIC 3078
Phone: +61 3 9555 3522
Associated Dealer: Trivett Classic Aston Martin Melbourne

Cat B

Glenelg Crash Repairs

222 Brighton Road, Somerton Park, South
Phone: +61 (0)3 9415 8181
Associated Dealer: Solitaire Aston Martin

Cat A

Gosney's

4 Anne Street, Southport, Gold Coast, Queensland 4215
Phone: 0061 7 5532 3166
Associated Dealer: Southport Motors

Cat B

Lombardi Brothers

11 Charles Street, Bentley, Perth, Western Australia, 6106
Phone: +00 61 89356-1013
Associated Dealership: Barbagallo Aston Martin

Austria

Cat A	Dingl Christian
	Wiener Strasse 28, 7052 Muellendorf Phone: 0043268263822 Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Vienna
Cat B	Kuhleitner, Karosserie - Spenglerei Kühleitner
	5020 Salzburg, Samergasse 23 Phone: 0043 662 - 87 4 377 Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Salzburg

Belgium

Cat B	Carroserie Adriaenssens
	Rijksweg 55, 2870 Nuurs Phone: 031 886 6368 Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Belgium
Cat B	Carrosserie Van Den Eede H & B
	Brandstraat 31, 2800 Willebroek Phone: 0032 3 886 78 49 Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Belgium

Canada

Cat A	Auto Bugatti
	11355 Cote de Liesse, Dorval, Quebec H9P 1B2 Phone: 001 514 636 7818 Associated Dealership: Decarie Motors
Cat B	Burrard autostrasse Collision Ltd.
	2185 Pine Street, Vancouver B.C. Phone: Associated Dealership: MCL Motor Cars
Cat B	Grand Touring Collision Centre
	1214 Caledonia Road, Toronto, Ontario Phone: 001 416 783 3327 Associated Dealership: Aston Martin of Ontario

China

Cat A	Aston Martin Beijing
	No 1 Jing Gang Lu, Jin Zhan Xiang, Chao Yang District, Beijing, 100018 Phone: Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Beijing
Cat A	Aston Martin Shanghai Body Shop
	Shanghai richcom traffic equipment lease service co. Ltd., 8685 Zhong Chun Road, Shanghai, 201101 Phone: 021-34100442 Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Shanghai

Denmark

Cat B	Brdr Elkjær
	Hejrevej 33, 2400 København NV Phone: 0045 38 10 45 40 Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Denmark
Cat B	Das Karrosseri
	Krondalvej 11, 2610 Rødovre Phone: 0045 44 84 84 85 Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Denmark

Dubai

Cat A	Al Habtoor
	PO Box 19879, Dubai, UAE Phone: 00971 4 691110 Associated Dealership: Al Habtoor

England

Cat B	Abridge Body Centre	Cat B	Balgores Motors	Cat A	Chartwell Bodycraft Chartwell Ltd.
	Abridge Body Centre Langston Road, Loughton, Essex, IG10 3TQ Phone: 07818016350 Associated Dealership: Lancaster Seven Oaks		1 Bryant Avenue, Romford, Essex, RM3 0AP Phone: 01708 344122 Associated Dealership: Grange Aston Martin		Chartwell House, 1 Brunel Parkway, Derby, DE24 8HR Phone: 01332 340972 Associated Dealership: Paramount Derby
Cat B	Ambassador Car Recovery Ltd.	Cat B	BlueBell Bodyshop	Cat B	Chiltern Aston Centre
	Unit 6, Forsyth Road, Woking, Surrey, GU21 5SB Phone: 01483 747752 Associated Dealership: HWM		Brooke Park, Lower Meadow Road, Handforth, Cheshire, SK 9 3LP Phone: 0161 486 2080 Associated Dealership: Stratstone of Wilmslow		Leyhill Road, Bovingdon, Herts, HP3 0NW Phone: 01442 833177 Associated Dealership: Chiltern Aston Centre
Cat A	Aston Martin Works Service	Cat B	Bodytechnics Ltd.	Cat B	City Centre Car Care Co.
	Tickford Street, Newport Pagnell, MK16 9AN Phone: 01908 619264 Associated Dealership: ASTON MARTIN		381 Sykes Road, Trading Estate, Slough, Berkshire, SL1 4SP Phone: 01753 505900 Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Sales of Mayfair		260 Bradford Street, Digbeth, Deritend, Birmingham, B12 0QY Phone: 0121 766 7699 Associated Dealership: Stratstone Birmingham
Cat B	Autobody Care			Cat B	Cougar Direct
	104 Gelderd Road, Leeds, LS 12 6BY Phone: 0113 257 2000 Associated Dealership: JCT 600 Leodis Court				Crescent Road, Luton, Bedfordshire, LU2 0AR Phone: 01582 540900 Associated Dealership: Grange Aston Martin Welwyn

Cat B	Davies Motor Company Ltd.
	Hadfield Close, Leckwith, Cardiff, CF11 8BD Phone: 029 20394407 Associated Dealership: Stratstone Cardiff
Cat B	DLC Cars
	1 - 11 St. Georges Road, Reading, Berks, RG30 2RG Phone: 01189 505004 Associated Dealership: Lancaster Reading
Cat A	Evans Halshaw Bodycare Centre
	Hepburn Gardens, Felling, Gateshead, NE10 0AD Phone: 0191 495 4300 Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Houghton Le Spring
Cat A	Fairweather Autosshine
	Vulcan Works, Water Lane, Exeter, EX2 8BY Phone: 01392 420000 Associated Dealership: Grange of Exeter

Cat B	Harwoods
	Seven Oaks Billingham, West Sussex, RH14 9AZ Phone: 01403 787020 Associated Dealership: Harwoods
Cat B	JCT600 Body Clinic
	320 Sticker Lane, Bradford, BD4 8RS Phone: 01274 778600 Associated Dealership: JCT 600 Leodis Court
Cat B	Lancaster Cambridge Body Centre
	High St., Harston, Cambridge, CB2 5QE Phone: 01223 872872 Associated Dealership: Lancaster Cambridge

Cat B	Lloyds Autobody
	Unit 11, Ringway Trading Estate, Shadowmoss Road, Wythenshawe, Manchester, M22 5LH Phone: 0161 437 9911 Associated Dealership: Stratstone of Wilmslow
Cat B	MKG Accident Repair Centres
	Cavendish Road, Stevenage, Herts, SG1 2ET Phone: 01438 720720 Associated Dealership: Grange Aston Martin Welwyn
Cat A	Panelwise of Weybridge
	The Latehouse, Hamm Moor Lane, Weybridge Business Park, Surrey, KT15 2SD Phone: 01932 856460 Associated Dealership: HWM

Cat A	Stratstone Body Repair Centre
	Unit 11, Hayes Trading Estate, Hingley Road, Lye, Stourbridge, B63 2RR Phone: 01384 426070 Associated Dealership: Stratstone Birmingham
Cat A	Stratton Motor Company
	Ipswich Road, Long Stratton, Norwich, NR15 2XJ Phone: 01508 530491 Associated Dealership: Stratton Motor Company
Cat B	The Autosshop Accident Repair Centre Ltd.
	Unit 22, Hopemills Industrial Park, London Road, Briscoombe, Stroud, GL5 2SE Phone: 01453 882844 Associated Dealership: Broughtons Aston Martin

Cat B	Tonbridge Repair Centre
	Units 8-9 Cannon Bridge works, Cannon Lane, Tonbridge, Kent TN9 1PP Phone: 01732 771117 Associated Dealership: Lancaster Seven Oaks

France

Cat A	Aston Martin Paris
	6-10 rue de la Cavalerie, 75015, Paris Phone: 0033 1 53 86 7272 Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Paris
Cat B	Carrosserie de Los Angeles
	10, rue de Breteil, 33320 EYSINES Phone: 0033 556 28 52 17 Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Bordeaux

Germany

Cat A	Alfred Krauthahn GmbH	Cat B	FA Heller GmbH	Cat B	Schwabengarage AG Stuttgart
	Nestorstrasse 27-29, D-10709 Berlin-Wilmersdorf Phone: 0049 30 896 000 31 Associated Dealership: Krauthahn Berlin		Sandhoferstr, 199-201, 68307 Mannheim Phone: 0049 621 772317 Associated Dealership: Kroymans Autohaus Mannheim GmbH		Cannstatter Strasse 46, 70190 Stuttgart Phone: 0711 2803 2400 Associated Dealership: Schwabengarage AG
Cat B	Autolackierung Dominante GmbH	Cat B	Gerrards KG + Sohn	Cat B	Aspelohe
	Grosser Haingraben 9, 65779 Kelkheim Phone: 0049 619 5 67477 Associated Dealership: Autohaus Kronberg		Adalbertsteinweg 220, 52066 Aachen Phone: 0049 241 501168 Associated Dealership: L Hauswirth Exclusive Car GmbH		36 22848 Norderstedt Phone: 0049 40 5234767 Associated Dealership: Tamsen Hamberg
Cat B	Bündesmann	Cat A	Preisacher Unfallinstandsetzung		
	Suitbertusstrabe 81, 40223, Düsseldorf Phone: 0049 02131 9227 36 Associated Dealership: Moll GmbH		Hirschbachweg 9c, 85659 Forstern, Munich Phone: 0049 81 24 / 7015 Associated Dealership: Autohaus Avalon München GmbH		
Cat B	Ellerbrock GmbH	Cat B	Premiumcars Peters		
	Rudolf Diesel Strasse 2, 28816 Stuhr Phone: 0049 421870181 Associated Dealership: Tamsen Bremen		Phone: 0049 231 91204048 Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Dortmund		

Hong Kong

Cat A	Shun Hing Motor
	Phone: Associated Dealership: Aston Martin (HK) Ltd.

Italy

Cat B	Csrrozzeria Vigentina SNC
	VIA RUTILIA 10/8 20141 MILANO Phone: 0039 02/56810266 Associated Dealership: Milan
Cat A	F.lii De Clementi & Snc
	Carrozzeria Autorizzata, Via Fiano, 14, 00191 Rome Phone: 0039 63333309 Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Rome
Cat A	New Car Carrozzeria
	New Car srl, 35027 Noventa Padovana (PD), Via Noventa Phone: 00394 989 59103 Associated Dealership: Padova

Japan

Cat A	Ace Auto Service Co. Ltd.
	Showajima Centre, 5-18 Showajima 1 Chome, Ohta-Ku, Tokyo 143-0004 Phone: 0081 3 5493 2345 Associated Dealership: Atlantic Cars Limited
Cat A	B-Right co, Ltd.
	4-23 Meiboku-cho, Torikai, Settsu-City, Osaka 566-0063 Phone: 0081 72 653 5341 Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Akasaka
Cat B	Hakko Jidosha Co. Ltd.
	4-8-35, Takaitanaka, Higashi-Osaka-Shi, Osaka Hakko Jidosha Co., Ltd. Phone: 0081 6-6783-3401 Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Osaka Hakko

Cat B	IM Corporation Ltd. 1-27-31 Kitamikata, Takatsu-ku, Kawasaki-shi, Kanagawa Phone: 0081 44833 1288 Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Akasaka
Cat B	Run and Run 2-226, Takasu, Sango-Shi, Saitama Phone: 0081 48-955-8381 Associated Dealership: Atlantic Cars Limited
Cat B	Showa Jidosha Co 303 -1, Irukadeshinden, Komaki-shi, Aichi, 485-0084 Phone: 0081 568 72 3718 Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Nagoya

Kuwait

Cat A	Aston Martin Kuwait Phone: Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Kuwait
-------	--

Lebanon

Cat B	Chawa Fares Honda Building, Chouran Unesco, PO Box 11-5800, Riad El Soih 11072000, Beirut Phone: 00961 180001 Associated Dealership: MANA Automotive
-------	---

Monaco

Cat A	Carrosserie Jourdan
	100 Val du Carei, 06500 Menton Phone: 0033 493 35 94 00 Associated Dealership: British Motors

Netherlands

Cat A	Autoschade Groeneveld B.V
	ESP 200, 5633 AC Eindhoven Phone: 0031 402424546 Associated Dealership: Cito Motors
Cat A	Boschman Autoschade
	Reggestraat 29, 5347 JG Oss Phone: 0031 412 650649 Associated Dealership: Kroymans Aston Martin B.V.

New Zealand

Cat A	Evans European
	353 Church Street, Penrose, Auckland Phone: 0064 9 636 5004 Associated Dealership: Independent Prestige Limited
Cat B	Precision AutoWerk
	224 Archers Road, Glenfield, Auckland Phone: 0064 9 443 2432 Associated Dealership: Independent Prestige Limited

Northern Ireland

Cat A	Charles Hurst ARC
	The Cutts, Derriaghy Ind Est, Donmurray, Northern Ireland BT17 9HN Phone: 02890 615856 Associated Dealership: Charles Hurst

Norway

Cat B	Ullern Bil Skade AS
	STALFJAERA 12, N - 0975 Olso Phone: (+47) 24173050 Associated Dealership: AS INSIGNIA

Portugal

Cat A	AML Sport SA
	Av. 25 de Abril, Lt. 120, Massamá, 2745-864 Queluz Phone: 00351 21 430 97 00 Associated Dealership: AML Sport SA
Cat B	Castro E Cruz
	Rua Avelino Sagado De Oliveira, 13-A 2680-104 Camarate Phone: 0035 1219474734 Associated Dealership: AML Sport SA

Russia

Cat B	SportCar-Center
	Abramtsevsкая 30, 127572, Moscow Phone: Associated Dealership: AM Moscow

Saudi Arabia

Cat A	Haji Husein Alireza
	Al Khobar Phone: 966 3 8588 800 Associated Dealership: Haji Husein Alireza

Singapore

Cat A	Tabernacle Auto Services PTE Ltd.
	41 Kian Teck Drive, Singapore, 628855 Phone: (65) 6268 6571 Associated Dealership: Aston Martin SEA

South Africa

Cat A	Renew-It Autobody
	19 Old Main Pretoria Road, Marlboro, Sandton, PO Box 784907, Sandton 2146 Phone: 011 444 6390 Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Sandton

Spain

Cat A	C De Salamanca SA Madrid
	C/ Zurbano, 93-95, Madrid 28003 Phone: 0034 915 548293 Associated Dealership: C De Salamanca SA Marbella
Cat B	C De Salamanca SA Marbella
	Marbella Carretera de Cádiz KM 171, 29670 San Pedro de Alcántara, Marbella Phone: 0034 669 44 77 01 Associated Dealership: C De Salamanca SA
Cat A	Central Reparacion Carrocerias
	Quadis Autocentre Maresme, Ctra. Nacional II, Km. 643, 08349 Cabrera de Mar Phone: 0034 93 741 80 15 Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Barcelona

Switzerland

Cat A	Carroserie M Bellido
	42A Route de Satigny, 1217 Meyrin, Geneva Phone: 0041 227823290 Associated Dealership: Garage P Keller SA
Cat A	Emil Frey AG
	Industrie Nord, Autocentre, 5745 Safenwil Phone: 0041 62 788 8888 Associated Dealership: Emil Frey AG
Cat A	Garage Tarcisio Pasta SA
	Via San Gottardo 47, 6828 BALERNA Phone: 0041 31 6358500 Associated Dealership: Garage Tarcisio Pasta SA

USA

Cat A	Amato's Autobody Inc. 3848 Sorrento Valley Blvd, San Diego, CA 92121 Phone: 001 858 455 6715 Associated Dealership: Aston Martin of San Diego	Cat B	Barsotti's 75 Mill Street, San Rafael, CA 94901 Phone: 001 415 454-5157 Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Marin	Cat B	Dayas Custom Autos Inc. 800 Bennet Drive, Longwood, Florida 32750 Phone: 001 407 3315599 Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Orlando
Cat A	Aston Martin of Troy 85 Linden Street, Waltham, MA 02452 Phone: 001 248-614-3181 Associated Dealership: Aston Martin of Troy	Cat A	Bell Red Auto Rebuild 1406 130th Avenue NE, Bellevue, Washington 98005 Phone: 001 425-453-5552 Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Seattle	Cat B	DC Autocraft 25/57 East Providencia Avenue, Burbank, California, 91502 Phone: 001 818846 5032 Associated Dealership: Galpin Aston Martin
Cat A	Aston Martin Tysons 8545 Leesburg Pike, Vienna VA 22182 Phone: 001-703-790-3220 Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Tysons	Cat A	Brook's Motorcars 9829 Bigge Street, Oakland, CA, 94603 Phone: 001 (510) 632-8901 Associated Dealership: Cole European	Cat B	Dell Auto Body 950 Camden Avenue, Campbell, CA 95008 Phone: 001 408 370 0189 Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Silicon Valley
Cat B	Avio Coach Craft 2245 Pontius Avenue, W. Los Angeles, CA 90064 Phone: 001 31 0312 1128 Associated Dealership: Aston Martin of Beverly Hills	Cat A	Countach - Auto Ref. & Coach Work 111 San Lorenzo, Coral Gables, FL 33146, Florida Phone: 001 305 443 1468 Associated Dealership: The Collection	Cat A	European Motor Car Works 2923 Tech Center Drive, Santa Ana, California 92705 Phone: 001 714 957 1290 Associated Dealership: Bauer Aston Martin

Cat A	Exoticar Paintworks Inc.	Cat A	Harry's Auto Collision Center	Cat A	Jacks Body Works Inc.
	2901 S Highland, Building 9E, Las Vegas, Nevada 89109 Phone: 001 702 733 1859 Associated Dealership: Gaudin Aston Martin of Las Vegas		1013 South La Brea Avenue, Los Angeles, California 90019 Phone: 001 323 933 4600 Associated Dealership: Aston Martin of Beverly Hills		68350 Commercial Road, Cathedral City, CA 92234 Phone: 001 760 321 4752 Associated Dealership: Desert European Motor Cars Ltd.
Cat A	First Class	Cat A	Hollis Auto Body Inc.	Cat A	John Eagle Collision Centre
	2412 NE 5th Avenue, Pompano Beach, FL 33064 Phone: 001 954 785 3784 Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Palm Beach		230 Eliot Street, Ashland, MA 01721 Phone: 001 508 881 1990 Associated Dealership: Aston Martin New England		6125 Peeler Street, Dallas, Texas, USA Phone: 001 214 353 3570 Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Dallas
Cat A	Flower Hill Auto Body Inc.	Cat A	Inter-Pro Autobody Inc.	Cat A	Katy Coach Works Inc.
	12 Middle Neck Road, Roslyn, NY 11576 Phone: 001 516 627 3913 Associated Dealership: Miller Motor Cars - Long Island		417 W Washington Av, Lake Bluff IL 60044 Phone: 001 847-295-1222 Associated Dealership: Lake Forest		1180 Blalock Road, Houston, Texas 77055 Phone: 001 713 465 6225 Associated Dealership: Star Motor Cars
Cat A	Global Collision	Cat A	J & B Bodywerks	Cat A	Magnum Collision Repair Centre
	5101 East Evans Avenue, Denver, Colorado 80222 Phone: 001 303 762 7562 Associated Dealership: Sill-Terhar Aston Martin		36 - 38 Beach St., Mt Vernon, NY 10550 Phone: 001 914 664 8080 Associated Dealership: Miller Motor Cars		1445 Field Park Cir., Marietta, Georgia 30066 Phone: 001 770 427-4590 Associated Dealership: Aston Martin of Atlanta

Scotland	
Cat A	Quality Autobody
	811 New Bruswick Avenue, Rahway, New Jersey 07065 Phone: 001 732 388 2400 Associated Dealership: F C Kerbeck Aston Martin
Cat B	R&S Auto Body Inc.
	4102 N Armenia Avenue Tampa, Florida 33607 Phone: 001 813-876-1913 Associated Dealership: Aston Martin of Tampa Bay
Cat B	Scotsdale Paint and Body
	350 N. Hayden Road, Scotsdale, AZ 85257 Phone: 001 480 421 8800 Associated Dealership: Scottsdale Aston Martin
Cat B	True Performance
	7854 Industrial Parkway, Plain City, Ohio 43064 Phone: 001 614 733 0708 Associated Dealership: Midwestern Auto Group



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN

Alphabetical Index

A

Accessory Power Socket	3.31
Acknowledge messages	4.5
Advanced Restraints System	3.19
Air Conditioning	
Operating Tips	7.2
Airbags	3.17
Alarm	
Movement Sensor	2.12
Reduced Guard	2.12
Tilt Sensor	2.12
Anti Corrosion Inspection	A.12
Anti-Lock Braking System	5.13
Ashtray and Cigar Lighter	3.32

Aston Martin Assistance	B.1
Aston Martin Warranties	C.1
Audio	8.1
Auxiliary Functions	8.28
CD Changer Functions	8.23
Essentials	8.6
iPod and USB Functions	8.26
Radio Functions	8.12
Satellite Radio Functions	8.16
Automatic Lock	2.10
Automatic Locking Retractors	3.26

B

Battery	
Charge	11.29
Maintenance	11.29

Battery Conditioner	11.29
Battery Disposal	11.28
Battery Protection Mode	11.31
Brakes	
Anti-Lock Braking System	5.13
Bulb Changing	11.39
Bulb Kit	11.39
C	
CALIFORNIA Proposition 65 Warning	1.6
Catalytic Converters	5.19
CD Changer Functions	8.23
Centre Stack	4.10
Checks Before Driving	3.2
Child Seats	3.24
Automatic Locking Retractors	3.26
Tether Anchor	3.25

Climate Control	
Automatic Operation	7.5
Control Switches	7.2
Manual Operation	7.6
Coat Hooks	3.34
Condensation, Headlamp Units	11.39
Controls	
Centre Stack	4.10
Instrument Cluster	4.3
Convertible Roof	
Cleaning	11.47
Deployable Rollbars	6.10
Manual Operation	6.6
Reproofs	11.47
Roof Operation	6.2
Wind Deflector	6.11

Cruise Control	4.20
Cup Holder	3.28
D	
Dangerous Substances	11.5
Data Recording	1.8
Day Time Running Lamps	4.16
Deadlocking	2.10
Dealer Directory	D.1
Defrosting and Demisting	
Automatic	7.5
Manual	7.6
Deployable Rollbars	3.27, 6.10
Door Mirrors	3.8
Auto Fold	3.9
Memory Mirrors	3.10
Power Fold	3.9

Driving	
Safety	5.2
Techniques	5.23
E	
Electric Windows	3.33
Emergency Items	
First Aid Kit	11.6
Tyre Sealant Kit	11.6
Emission Warranty	11.3
Emotion Control Unit	2.2
F	
First Aid Kit	11.6
Fog Lamp Switch	4.11
Fuel	
Catalytic Converters	5.19
Filler Cap	5.18
Filler Flap Emergency Release	4.18

Fuel Flap Switch	5.18
Fuel Gauge	4.4
Fuses	11.34
G	
Garage Door Opener	2.14
Operation	2.16
Programming	2.15
Reprogramming	2.18
Rolling Code Synchronization	2.17
Gear Shifts	
Hyper-shift	5.8
H	
Hands-Free Phone	
Connecting a Phone	9.5
Functions	9.2
Making Calls	9.9
Receiving Calls	9.10
Removing a Phone	9.8

Hazard Warning Lamps	4.10
Headlamp Condensation	11.39
Headlamp Levelling	4.17
Homesafe	2.11
Hood - Opening and Closing	11.7
Horn	4.18
Hyper-shift	5.8
I	
Ignition Control	4.12
Instrument Cluster	4.3
Interior Mirrors	
Automatic Dimming	3.8
Manual Dip	3.7
Vanity	3.8

Interior Storage	3.27
iPod and USB Functions	8.26
iPod and USB Ports	3.29
L	
Lamps On Warning	4.16
Levels	
Brake Fluid	11.10
Engine Coolant	11.10
Engine Oil	11.11
Power Steering Fluid	11.10
Washer Fluid	11.9
Licence Plate Lights	11.41
Limp-home Mode	5.11
Locking the Vehicle	2.6
Low Outside Temperature Warning	4.9

M	
Maintenance	11.6
Bulb Changing	11.39
Fluid Levels	11.9
Vehicle Jacking	11.3
Maintenance Items	
Battery Conditioner	11.7
Tire Sealant Kit	11.24
Manual Transmission	5.12
Master Lamp Switch	4.16
Memory Mirrors	3.10
Message Centre (Left)	4.4
Message Centre (Right)	4.5
Messages	
Acknowledge	4.5
Mirrors	3.7
Interior	3.7

O	
Owner Maintenance	11.6
P	
Paint Work	11.45
Parking Assist	
Front and Rear	5.21
Rear	5.19
Passenger Sensing	3.19
Passive Anti-Theft System	2.13
Perchlorate Material	1.6
Positive Torque Control	5.18
Power Fold Door Mirrors	3.9
R	
Radio Functions	8.12
Reading Lamps	3.34
Rear Parking Assist	5.19

Reduced Guard	2.12
Replacement of Airbag Units Record	A.13
Replacement of Seat Belt Pre-tensioners Record	A.14
Restraints System	3.11
Determining if the System is Operational	3.13
Rollbars	6.10
Roof Operation	6.2
S	
Safety Defects - Reporting	1.9
Satellite Navigation (Option)	
Advanced Mode	10.17
Advanced Mode Settings	10.14
Demo	10.7
Easy Mode	10.10
Easy Mode Settings	10.9
Map Updates	10.3
System Controls	10.4

Satellite Radio Functions	8.16
Seat Back Release	3.5
Seat Belts	3.13
Care and Maintenance	11.49
Child Restraints	3.16
Seats	
Adjustment	3.4
Memory Seats	3.5
Service Interval Display	4.5
Service Periods	A.4
Service Record	A.10
Service Schedules	A.5
Servicing Precautions	11.4
Side Marker Lamps	11.40

Specifications	
Brakes	12.5
Exterior Features	12.10
Interior Features	12.7
Performance	12.2
Recommended Fluids	12.10
Steering	12.4
Suspension	12.4
Weights	12.10
Wheel Nut Torque	12.5
Wheels and Tires	12.5
Sportshift Transmission	5.5
Clutch Warnings	5.10
Crawl Mode	5.9
Hyper-shift	5.8
Limp Home Mode	5.11

Starting the Engine	5.2
Stopping the Engine	5.4
Supplemental Restraints System	3.17
Switches and Controls	
Centre Stack	4.10
Information and Warning Lamps	4.6
Instrument Cluster	4.3
Stalk Controls	4.14
T	
Tachometer	4.5
Tether Anchor	3.25
Tire Pressure Monitoring	4.23
Tire Sealant Kit	11.24
Towing	11.26
Traction Control	5.17

Transmission	
Manual	5.12
Sportshift	5.5
Trip Computer	4.19
Trunk Cover	3.30
Trunk Lid	
Emergency Release	2.9
Operation	2.8
U	
Umbrella	3.35
Uniform Tire Quality Grades	11.15
Unlocking the Vehicle	2.5
Unnecessary Battery Drain	4.14
V	
Vanity Mirror	3.8
Vehicle Cleaning	11.45

Vehicle Jacking	11.3
Vehicle Key	2.2
Vehicle Locked - Boot Open	2.9
Vehicle Provenance	1.9
Vehicle Storage	11.49
W	
Wheel Nut Torque	12.5
Wind Deflector (Roadster)	6.11
Window Reset	11.44
Windshield Blade Replacement	11.12
Winter Wheels	12.5
Wipers	4.15
Wiper Control	4.15